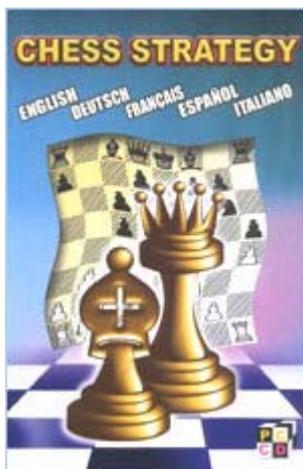


Strategy 2.0



Designed by GM Alexander Kalinin to teach students strategy and positional play, STRATEGY 2.0 is a significantly expanded version of the original Strategy, containing not only more exercises but also many new lessons not present in the first edition. This chess program presents 1800 instructive positions with 18 most important strategic themes, including: Advantage in development, Advantage in space, Attack on the King, Attack on the Queenside, Weak square, Pawn structure, Open files and diagonals, Central squares, Disposition of pieces, Exchange, Positional Sacrifice, Prophylaxis, Prevention, Isolated Queen's pawn, Hanging pawns, Pawn pair c3+d4 on the semi-open files, The rule of two weaknesses, Plan, Defense and Counterattack.



Features of the program include:

- 250 instructive examples for self-study illustrating the lessons presented, all classified and annotated extensively.
- 1100 selected exercises for you to solve, classified according to themes and difficulty.
- Numerous text and visual hints to help the student find the solution.
- On line help markers.
- User statistics gathering and ELO calculating
- 450 typical positions to train and play against Crafty, the built-in playing engine,



or other supported external programs such as Rebel, Mchess, etc...

- Strategy generates the student's ELO and statistics in easy-to-read bar graphs, based on the students' success rate with the exercises that help them keep track of their progress.



- Multiple user profiles are possible, with independent ratings and all other individual information.
- Good for teachers: keeps track of the time and score of each position for each student.



Several languages are supported: English, French, German, Italian, Russian and Spanish.

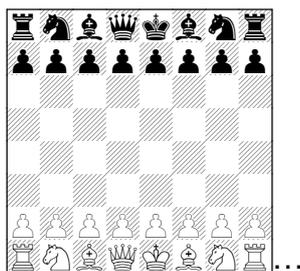
No additional software is required

CONTENTS

System requirements:

Essential: IBM-compatible PC, 32 Mb RAM, Hard Disk 80 Mb of free disk space, Windows 95/98/2000/NT/ME/XP, CD-ROM drive.

ADVANTAGE IN DEVELOPMENT



ADVANTAGE IN DEVELOPMENT

The more of your pieces take part in play, the more diverse attacking possibilities you have. Therefore lead in development is a very significant factor that is especially important in the opening.

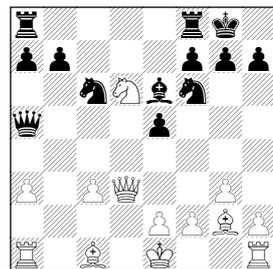
There are three main opening principles.

1. Quick mobilization of pieces.
2. Fighting for the center.
3. A player, who has an advantage in development, should strive to open the position.

The old masters were familiar with these rules very well. For instance, Paul Morphy's games provide many excellent examples.

1. e4 e5 2. f4 d5 3. ed e4 4. Nc3 Nf6 5. d3 Bb4 6. Bd2 e3!! A beautiful pawn sacrifice. Morphy opens the e-file and obtains an advantage in development. 7. Bxe3 O-O! 8. Bd2 Bxc3 9. bc Re8+ 10. Be2 Bg4 11. c4 c6! Undermining the d5-pawn, Morphy opens the d-file and magnifies his development lead. 12. dc Nxc6 13. Kf1 Rxe2! 14. Nxe2 Nd4 15. Qb1 Bxe2+ 16. Kf2 Ng4+ 17. Kg1 Nf3+! 18. gf Qd4+ 19. Kg2 Qf2+ 20. Kh3 Qxf3+ 21. Kh4 Nh6 0:1, Schulten - Morphy, (New York,1857)

Topalov - Ivanchuk (Linares,1999)



One should not forget that an advantage in development is temporary and therefore its utilizing requires vigorous actions. Otherwise you give your opponent time to consolidate his position and your lead in development may evaporate.

1... e4! For the sake of opening the central files Black sacrifices a pawn, which is a typical method in similar situations.

[1... Rfd8 2. Nxb7!□]

2. Nxe4 Nxe4 3. Bxe4 Rad8 4. Qc2 Nd4 5. Qb2 Nxe2!! 6. Kxe2 Rfe8 7. Qb4

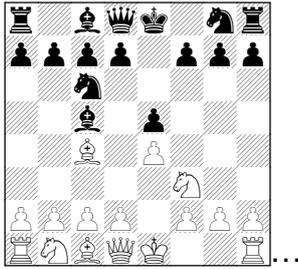
[7. Re1 Qh5+ 8. Kf1 Bh3+ 9. Kg1 Rxe4°]

7... Qh5+ 8. f3 f5 9. g4 Qh3 10. gf Bxf5 11. Qc4+ Kh8 12. Re1 Rxe4+! 0:1, Topalov - Ivanchuk, (Linares,1999)

[...]

[13. fe Bg4+ 14. Kf2 Qxh2+ 15. Ke3 Qg3#]

Martin - Khort (corr.,1908)



1. b4!? The Evans gambit. White sacrifices a pawn, but wins a tempo for c2-c3 followed by occupation of the center with d2-d4. 1... Bxb4 2. c3 Ba5 3. d4 ed 4. O-O! dc?!

[1 4... Nge7]

5. Qb3 Qf6 6. e5! Qg6 7. Nxc3 Nge7 8. Ba3 Bxc3 9. Qxc3 O-O Black managed to evacuate his king from the center but his queen's bishop "is sleeping". So, it is no wonder that very soon the excellently developed white pieces launch a decisive attack on the kingside. 10. Rad1 Re8 11. Rfe1 Rb8 12. Bd3 f5

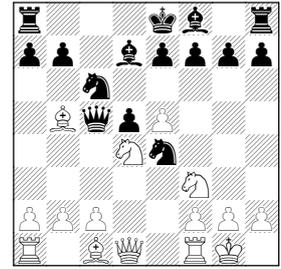
[12... Qh5 13. Re4! Ng6 14. g4 Qh3 15. Bf1□]

13. ef Qxf6 14. Qb3+ Kh8

[14... d5 15. Qxd5+! Nxd5 16. Rxe8+ Kf7 17. Rf8+ Ke6 18. Bc4 Nce7 19. Re1+ Kd7 20. Ne5+□]

15. Bb2 Qf8 16. Ng5 d5 17. Re6! Bxe6 18. Nxe6 Qf7 19. Bxg7+ Kg8 20. Bxh7+! Kxh7 21. Qh3+ Kg6 22. Qh6+ Kf5 23. g4+ Ke4 24. Qe3# 1:0, Martin - Khort, correspondence, 1908

Nezhmetdinov - Kamyshov (Russia,1950)



Sometimes inexperienced players strive for capturing opponent's pawns even though this results in a lag in development. This is a typical mistake and such a "gluttony" is often punished, especially in the open positions. Remember: in the opening a tempo is sometimes more important than a pawn!

1... Nxe5?

[1... e6, intending to complete development, would have been more cautious.]

2. Nxe5 Bxb5 3. Nxb5 Qxb5 4. Re1! Nf6

[4... e6 5. c4! Qa5 6. Rxe4 de 7. Qd7#]

5. Bg5 e6 6. c4! Qa5

[6... dc 7. Bxf6 gf 8. a4! Qd5 9. Qxd5 ed 10. Ng6+□]

7. Bxf6 gf 8. Nxf7!! Kxf7 9. Qh5+ Ke7

[9... Kg8 10. Qg4+ Bg7 11. Qxe6+ Kf8 12. Qd6+ Kg8 13. Re7□]

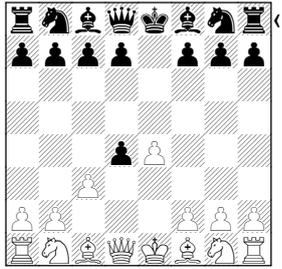
10. cd e5 11. f4 Qxd5 12. fe f5 13. e6 Kf6

14. h4! Bc5+ 15. Kh1 Qxe6 16. Qh6+

1:0, Nezhmetdinov - Kamyshov,

(Russia,1950)

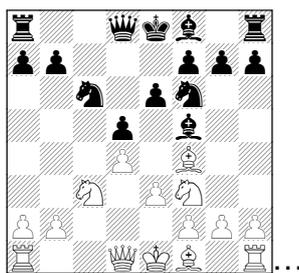
Nukholm - Tartakover (Baden,1922)



Return of extra material in the proper moment is a reliable method of fighting against gambits, which allows to simplify situation thus neutralizing opponent's lead in development. The Schlechter variation of the Center Gambit is a good illustration of this rule.

3... dc 4. Bc4 cb 5. Bxb2 d5! 6. Bxd5 Nf6! 7. Bxf7+ Kxf7 8. Qxd8 Bb4+ 9. Qd2 Bxd2+ 10. Nxd2 Re8 11. f3 c5 12. Nc4 Rd8³ followed by ♞c6. Black has good prospects in the endgame. Nukholm - Tartakover (Baden,1922)

Rashkovsky - Beliavsky (Minsk,1979)



1. Bb5 In the symmetrical positions Black should take great care because an extra tempo may give White a dangerous initiative. 1... Nd7!

[1... Bb4?! 2. Ne5! Qa5 3. Bxc6+ bc 4. O-O! Bxc3 5. bc Qxc3 6. Qc1! Qxc1 7.

Rfxc1 O-O 8. f3 h6 9. Nxc6± Botvinnik - Tal, Moscow (World championship match) 1961]

2. Qa4 Rc8 3. O-O

[3. Bxc6?! Rxc6 4. Qxa7 Qc8©]

3... a6 Repelling White's threats along the a4-e8 diagonal, little Black is left behind in development. 4. Bxc6 Rxc6 5. Rfc1 Be7 6. Ne2 Bd3?!

[Later on, a reliable defense for Black was found. 6... Qb6! 7. Rxc6 bc 8. Rc1 Bd3! 9. Qd1 (9. Rxc6 Qxb2 10. Rc8+Bd8) 9... Bxe2 10. Qxe2 O-O 11. Ne5 Nxe5 12. Bxe5 Rc8= Rashkovsky - Dolmatov, Vilnius 1980]

7. Rxc6! Bb5

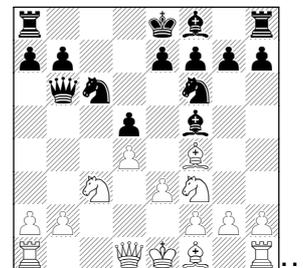
[7... bc 8. Nc1! Bb5 9. Qc2 ... à4□ T. Petrosian - Sveshnikov, Moscow 1976]

8. Qxb5!! A brilliant queen sacrifice allows White to retain his initiative. 8... ab 9. Rc7 Nb6

[9... e5 10. Rac1 ef 11. Rc8]

10. Rxb7 Bd6 11. Ne5 Bxe5 12. Bxe5 O-O 13. Rb8 Qxb8 14. Bxb8 Rxb8 15. b3 Kf8 16. Kf1-□ Rashkovsky - Beliavsky, (Minsk,1979)

Petrosian T. - Sorokin N. (Tbilisi,1945)



1. a3! e6

[1... Qxb2 2. Na4 Qc2 3. Qxc2 Bxc2 4. Nc5f with the queenside initiative, Makogonov - Ravinsky, Moscow 1944]

2. Bd3! A clever move. Usually, in the positions with such a pawn structure, the exchange of the light-squared bishops is in Black's favor. Here, however, Petrosian is going to quickly develop his forces and to gain the initiative on the queenside with b2-b4 followed by ♖c3-a4-c5, exploiting the black queen's position on b6. 2... Bxd3 3. Qxd3 Rc8?!

[1 3... Be7?]

4. O-O Na5?! With this move Black prevents b2-b4 in view of ♖c4, but delays his own kingside development. 5. e4! To utilize an advantage in development, one should open the game! 5... de

[5... Qxb2 6. Bd2!±]

6. Nxe4 Nd5 7. Bg3 Qb3 8. Qd2! Nc4 9. Qg5! h6

[9... f6 10. Qg4 Kf7 11. Nfg5+!□]

10. Qg4 h5 11. Qg5 Rh6 12. Rae1! Nxb2

[12... f6 13. Qxd5! ed 14. Nc5+□]

13. Nfd2 Qb5 14. f4! Like a battering ram, the f-pawn is knocking down the black castle walls. 14... Rg6 15. Qxh5 Rh6 16. Qf3 Qd3 17. Qf2 g6 18. f5! gf 19. Qxf5! Qxd4+

[19... ef 20. Nf6+ Kd8 21. Re8#]

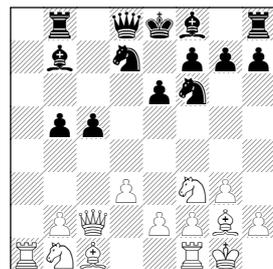
20. Kh1 Be7

[20... Qg7 21. Qxd5!□]

21. Qxf7+ Kd7 22. Nf3 Qh8 23. Be5 Qh7

24. Qxh7 Rxh7 25. Bxb2□ Petrosian T. - Sorokin N. (Tbilisi,1945)

Kalinin A. - Jonkman (Haarlem,1996)



1... Ra8?! Black begins to fight for the open a-file. In this case, however, it is more important to finish the kingside development.

[1 1... Be7]

2. Rxa8 Qxa8 3. Qb3! Bc6 4. Nh4! (xb5) Nd5?!

[1 4... Bxg2 5. Nxc2 Qc6 6. Na3 b4 7. Nc4² xñ4, ñ5]

5. Nc3 Qb7 Black managed to cover his queenside weaknesses. Alas, he wasted too much time and his king cannot escape from the center. 6. Nxd5! ed

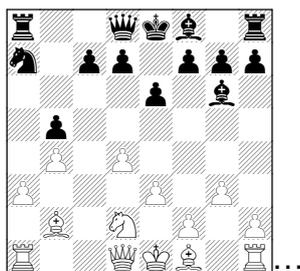
[6... Bxd5 7. Bxd5 ed 8. Nf5]

7. Nf5! g6 8. Nh6 Bg7 9. e4! c4 10. Qb4 Bf8 11. Qc3 f6 12. ed Bxd5 13. Re1+ Be7 14. Bxd5 Qxd5 15. dc bc 16. Ng4! Qc5

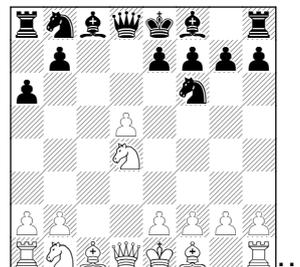
[16... Kf7 17. Ne3± xñ4]

17. Nxf6+ Nxf6 18. Qxf6 Rf8 19. Be3! Qb4 20. Bd2! Qc5 21. Rxe7+! Qxe7 22. Qxe7+ Kxe7 23. Bb4+ Ke8 24. Bxf8 Kxf8 25. Kg2 1:0, Kalinin A. - Jonkman, (Harlem,1996)

Kasparov - Andersson U. (Tilburg,1981)



Alekhin - Wolf (Pistyayev, 1922)



The principles of the opening strategy require quick mobilization of forces and castling. As a rule, only later on one may think about active operations. However, there are some exceptions. Sometimes a player, who has a lead in development, should start an attack even with his own king in the center. 1. h4!

[After the stereotyped 1. Bg2 d5! Black has nothing to worry about.]

1... h6(xg6) 2. d5! ed 3. Bg2 c6 4. O-O Black's development is frustrated. At the same time, White is going to open the center with e3-e4, and this threat is irresistible. 4... f6

[4... f5 5. h5± xg6,f5; x'a1-h8]

5. Re1!

[5. e4 de 6. Bxe4 Bf7!]

5... Be7 6. Qg4 Kf7 7. h5 Bh7 8. e4! de 9. Bxe4(xg6) Bxe4 10. Nxe4 Nc8

[10... Rf8 11. Rad1 d5 12. Nxf6!□;

10... Re8 11. Qg6+ Kf8 12. g4... ♖e4-g3-f5□]

11. Rad1 Ra7 12. Nxf6! gf

[12... Bxf6 13. Qg6+ Kf8 14. Bxf6 gf 15. Re6!□]

13. Qg6+ Kf8 14. Bc1! d5 15. Rd4! Nd6 16. Rg4 Nf7 17. Bxh6+! Ke8 18. Bg7 1:0, Kasparov - Andersson, (Tilburg, 1981)

[...]

[18... Rg8 19. h6□]

As a rule, it is recommended not to make moves with the same piece twice in the opening as this may lead to lag in development. However, take a look at White's moves 1-11 from the following beautiful game. White made seven (!) moves with his queen and knight, having completely paralyzed opponent's forces.

1. e4!! It is important for White to keep the pawn on d5, as it puts strong pressure on the opponent's position. 1... Nxe4 2. Qa4+! Bd7

[2... Qd7? 3. Bb5!□]

3. Qb3 Nc5 4. Qe3! g6

[4... e6 5. Bc4f"]

5. Nf3! Qc7 6. Qc3! Rg8 7. Be3 b6 8. Nbd2

[8. b4 Bg7 9. Nd4 Qa7! 10. Qc2 Nb7 11. Nc3±]

8... Bg7 9. Bd4 Bxd4 10. Qxd4 Bb5

[10... Bf5 11. Be2 Nbd7 12. g4! Bc2 13. Rc1□]

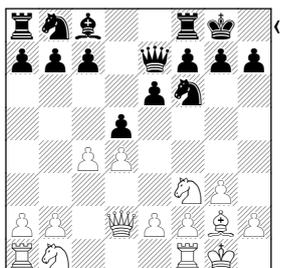
11. Bxb5+ ab 12. O-O± ♞o xϕe8 Ra4 13. b4 Qd8 14. a3 Nbd7 15. Rfe1 Kf8 16. d6! Ne6 17. Rxe6! fe 18. Ng5 Qb8

[18... e5 19. Qd5 Qe8 20. Ne6+ Kf7

21. Nc7+ e6 22. Qf3+□]

19. Nxe6+ Kf7 20. Ng5+ Kf8 21. Qd5 Rg7
22. Ne6+ Kg8 23. Nxc7+ Kxc7 24. de□
Alekhin - Wolf, (Pistyán,1922)

Kasparov - Petrosian T. (Bugojno,1982)



In the previously examined examples a lead in advantage turned into strong attack against the enemy king. In the following game White's strategy consisted in the "freezing" of the opponent's queenside.

1... dc A dubious decision. Opening up of the game is to White's benefit because his pieces are more active.

[1... c6 2. Qc2 Nbd7 would have been more reliable.]

2. Na3 c5 3. dc Qxc5 4. Rac1 Nc6 5. Nxc4 Qe7?

[5... Rd8! 6. Qc2 Bd7 7. Qb3?]

6. Nfe5! Nxe5 7. Nxe5 White's development lead is obvious, but Black does not have evident weaknesses. If Black could develop his queenside, he would equalize. 7... Nd5(... f6) 8. Rfd1 Nb6 9. Qa5! g6

[9... f6 10. Nc4! Nxc4 11. Rxc4± ... !c7]

10. Rd3! Nd5

[10... Rd8 11. Qc5! Qxc5 12. Rxd8+

Qf8 13. Rxf8+ Kxf8 14. Rc7□]

11. e4! Nb6 12. Bf1! (x!d3)

[12. a3 f6 13. Nc4 Nxc4 14. Rxc4 b6
15. Qc3 Ba6 16. Rc7 Qxc7! 17. Qxc7
Bxd3=]

12... Re8

[1 12... f6 13. Nc4 Bd7 14. Nxb6 ab 15.
Qxb6 Bc6 16. a3±]

13. Rdd1! Rf8

[13... f6 14. Nc4 Bd7 15. Nxb6 ab 16.
Qxb6 Bc6 17. Bb5! Bxb5 18. Qxb5□]

14. a3! Demonstrating to Black that he is helpless. 14... Kg7 15. b3 (... à3-à4-à5)

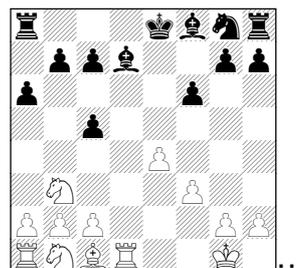
15... Kg8 16. a4 Rd8 17. Qc5!

1:0,Kasparov - Petrosian T.
(Bugojno,1982) [...]

[17... Qxc5 18. Rxd8+ Qf8 19. Rxf8+
Kxf8 20. Rc7□;

17... Qe8 18. Ng4□]

Timman - Adams M. (Belgrade,1995)



In the endgame too, an advantage in development is of primary importance. The following example presents one of the latest inventions in the Exchange variation of the Ruy Lopez.

1. Bf4 O-O-O 2. Nc3 It is not easy for Black to complete his kingside

development, because the pawn on c5 needs a protection. Exploiting this weakness, White seizes the initiative. 2...

c4

[2... b6 3. Nd5]

3. Na5! Bc5+ 4. Kf1 b5 5. Nd5 c6 6. b4!

Ba7 7. Nc7!!

[7. Be3 Bxe3 8. Nxe3 Ne7 9. Rd6 Kc7

10. Rad1 Bc8 Seirawan Y. -

Karpov A., Monte Carlo 1993]

7... Bb8 8. Ne6!! Bxf4

[8... Bxe6 9. Rxd8+ Kxd8 10. Bxb8±]

9. Nxc6! Re8 10. Na7+ Kb8 11. Nxf4

Re7 12. Nd5 Re8

[12... Re6 13. Nb6 Be8 14. Nbc8 Nh6

15. Rd5 Nf7] Nielsen Peter H. -

Dutreeuw M., Yerevan (Olympiad)

1996]

13. Nf4 Re7 14. Nd5 Re8 15. Nb6! Be6

16. Nc6+ Kc7 17. Nd4 Kxb6 18. Nxe6

Rxe6 19. Rd8! Despite being a piece up

in the endgame, Black is helpless! 19...

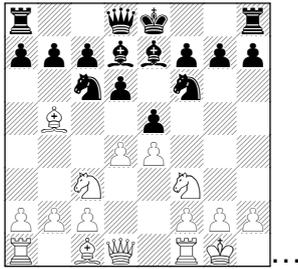
h5 20. Rad1 f5 21. ef Reh6 22. Rb8+ Kc7

23. Rdd8 Rd6 24. Rbc8+ Kb7 25. Rxc8

Rxc8 26. Rxc8 1:0, Timman - Adams M.

(Belgrade, 1995)

ADVANTAGE IN SPACE



ADVANTAGE IN SPACE

Space advantage is a significant factor for the evaluating of position. If you have extra space, you can harmoniously develop your pieces and easily transfer them from one flank to another. If you have less space, the mobility of your pieces is restricted. The great German player Tarrasch emphasized the importance of the space advantage. He even said that every restricted position might have led to a loss.

1. Re1! According to Tarrasch, this move casts doubt on the Steinitz Defense of the Ruy Lopez because Black is forced to exchange in the center with e5xd4 thus giving his opponent advantage in space.

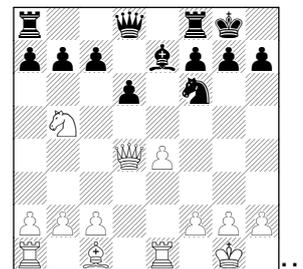
1... Nxd4

[1... O-O? 2. Bxc6! Bxc6 3. de de 4. Qxd8 Raxd8 (4... Rfxd8 5. Nxe5 Bxe4 6. Nxe4 Nxe4 7. Nd3 f5 8. f3 Bc5+ 9. Kf1□) 5. Nxe5 Bxe4 6. Nxe4 Nxe4 7. Nd3 f5 8. f3 Bc5+ 9. Nxc5! Nxc5 10. Bg5! Rd5 11. Be7 Re8 12. c4□ Tarrasch - Marco, Dresden 1892]

2. Nxd4 ed 3. Bxd7+ Qxd7 4. Qxd4 O-O 5. b3! ('a1-h8) Rfe8 6. Bb2 Bf8 7. Rad1 White controls more space, and therefore he is clearly better. His pieces are

considerably more active. In particular, White can use the 3rd rank for transferring his pieces to the kingside. 7... Qc6 8. Rd3! Re6 9. Rde3 Rae8 10. h3 Qb6 11. Qd3 c6 12. Na4! Qc7 13. c4! White magnifies his territorial gains. 13... Nd7 14. Kh1 f6 15. Qc2 Ne5 16. Nc3 Nf7 17. g4 Qa5 18. Rd1 Qb6 19. h4 Ne5 20. Rg3 Nf7 21. f3 Nh8 22. Ne2 Qc7 23. Rdg1 The space advantage allows White to regroup his forces in the most convenient way. 23... Qf7 24. Nd4 R6e7 25. g5! fg 26. Rxg5 g6 27. Nf5 Re5 28. f4 Rxf5 29. ef Bg7 30. fg 1:0, Tarrasch - Schlehter, (Leipzig, 1894)

Capablanca - Fonarov (New York, 1904)



Quite often, extra space gives the strongest side possibility to quickly transfer his pieces from one flank to another, creating dangerous threats all over the board.

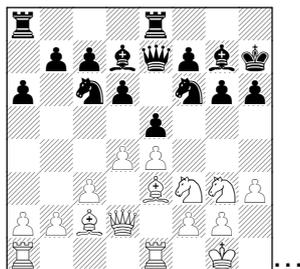
1. Qc3! c6?! (xd6)

[1... a6! 2. Nd4 Nd7 3. Nf5 Bf6 4. Qg3 Ne5 5. Bh6 Ng6= Kupper - Vidmar, Opatija 1953]

2. Nd4! Nd7 3. Nf5! Bf6 4. Qg3! In four moves White transferred his pieces to the kingside where they join an attack on the

opponent's king. 4... Ne5 5. Bf4 Qc7 6. Rad1 Rad8 7. Rxd6!! Rxd6 8. Bxe5 Rd1! 9. Rxd1 Bxe5 10. Nh6+ Kh8 11. Qxe5!! Qxe5 12. Nxf7+ 1:0,Capablanca - Fonarov, (New York,1904)

Tarrasch - Teichmann (Ostend,1905)

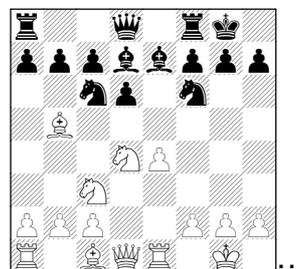


Better communications allow the player, who possesses more space, to attack on both sides at the same time. True, in the closed positions the events unfold much slower.

1. d5 White closes the center and seizes space. 1... Nd8 2. c4 a5 3. b3! (... a3,b4,ñ5f«) b6 4. a3 Nb7 5. b4 Ra7 6. Qc3 Ng8 7. Nd2 Rea8 8. f3 Nf6 9. Bb3 Be8 10. Rac1 Nd7(xc5) 11. Qc2 Bf8 12. Ne2! (xb5) Bg7 13. Nc3 Nf6 14. Nb5 Bxb5 15. cb Ne8 16. Qd3 ab 17. ab Nd8 18. Qf1 Qd7 19. Ra1 Qc8 20. Rxa7 Rxa7 21. Ra1 Rxa1 22. Qxa1 Qb8 23. Qa6 Nf6 24. Bc4 Kg8 25. g3! Having fettered the opponent's forces on the queenside, White opens a second front on the kingside. 25... Kf8 26. h4! Nd7 27. Bf1! Ke8 28. Bh3! Bf8 29. Nc4 h5 30. g4! Be7 31. Bf2 Bf6 32. gh gh 33. Kh1 Qb7 34. Ne3! (xf5) Nf8 35. Nf5 Qb8 36. Qa1! The black pieces are severely restricted and

they cannot follow White's quick regrouping. 36... Ng6 37. Bg3 Bh8 38. Kh2 Qb7 39. Bg2 Qc8 40. Qc1! Qd7 41. Bh3 Kf8 42. Qh6+! Kg8 43. Qxh5 Qe8 44. Qg5 Kf8 45. h5 Nf4 46. Bh4 f6 47. Qh6+ Kg8 48. Bxf6 Nf7 49. Ne7+ Qxe7 50. Qxh8+ Nxf8 51. Bxe7 Nf7 52. Be6 Nxf5 53. Bd8 1:0,Tarrasch - Teichmann, (Ostend,1905)

Teichmann - Nimzowitsch (Karlsbad,1907)



The player, who possesses less space, should strive for simplification because large number of pieces impede each other on small area of the board.

1. Bg5 Nxd4! 2. Qxd4 Bxb5! 3. Nxb5 Re8 The exchanges resulted in vacating of the d7-square, which makes possible for Black to regroup via ♠f6-d7 followed by ♜e7-f6. 4. Nc3 Nd7! 5. Bxe7 Rxe7 6. Rad1 Nb6! (õ d5) 7. Re3 Re6 8. b3 Qg5! 9. Rg3 Qe5! 10. Qd2 f5! 11. Nd5 Rc8 12. c4 Nxd5

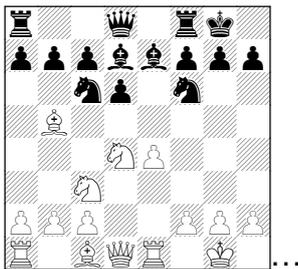
[12... fe? 13. Rg5□]

13. ed Ree8 14. Re3 Qf6 15. Rde1 Kf8! Black prepares exchange of the major pieces along the e-file, after which White's space advantage will be completely neutralized. 16. g3 b6 17. Kg2

[17. Re6 Rxe6 18. Rxe6 Qf7... !a8=]

17... Rxe3 18. Qxe3 Qf7 19. f4 Re8 20. Qxe8+ Qxe8 21. Rxe8+ Kxe8 22. Kf3 Kf7 23. h3 Kf6 24. Ke3 Ke7 25. b4 a6 1/2:1/2,Teichmann - Nimzowitsch, (Karlsbad,1907)

Capablanca - Hodjes (New York,1915)



The player, who possesses more space, should try to avoid exchanges which make opponent's life easier.

1. Bf1! A subtle move. White hides his bishop from exchange. 1... Nxd4 2. Qxd4 Bc6 3. b4! Kh8 The black pieces are suffering from lack of space.

[3... Nd7? 4. b5! Bf6 5. Qe3 Bxc3 6. Qxc3];

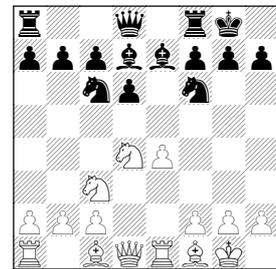
3... Ne8 4. Bb2 Bf6 5. Qd2± õåâ8]

4. Bb2! Ng8 5. Nd5 f6

[5... Bf6 6. Nxf6 Qxf6±-]

6. Nf4±† Qc8 7. Re3! f» Qg4 8. g3 Qc8 9. Bc4! (õå6) Bd7 10. Qd5 c6 11. Qh5 Qe8 12. Qd1! Nh6 13. Ne6 Bxe6 14. Bxe6±-, õå7 Qg6 15. Kg2 Bd8 16. Qxd6 Bb6 17. Re2 f5 18. ef Nxf5 19. Qd3 Nh4+ 20. Kh1 Rxf2 21. Rxf2 Bxf2 22. Qxg6 Nxg6 23. Rf1 Rf8 24. Rd1 1:0,Capablanca - Hodjes, (New York,1915)

Euwe - Capablanca (London,1922)



One should not think that a player, who possesses less space, is always dreaming of simplifications and draw. Sometimes, the constrained player's pieces have great potential energy, ready to break free.

1... Re8! (... ¥e7-f8, g6, ¥f8-g7) Black's counterplay is based upon pressure on the e4-pawn along the open e-file and establishing control of the e5-square. 2. f3 Nxd4

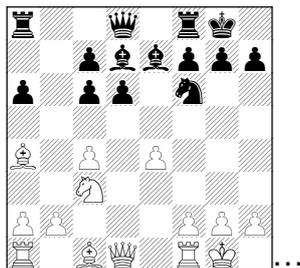
[2... Bf8 3. Bg5 h6 4. Bh4 g6 5. Nd5 Bg7 6. Nb5 g5 (6... Rc8 7. c4²) 7. Ndxc7 gh 8. Nxa8 Qxa8 9. Nc7?! (9. Qxd6 Rd8 10. Qf4 h3 11. Rad1f Lasker) 9... Qd8 10. Nxe8 Nxe8› Lasker - Capablanca, Havana (World championship match) 1921]

3. Qxd4 Be6! (... d6-d5,,) 4. Qf2 c6! 5. Bd2 Qb6! 6. Na4 Qxf2+ 7. Kxf2 d5! After exchange of the e4-pawn White's space advantage disappears. 8. e5

[8. ed Nxd5³ õåâ4]

8... Nd7 9. g3? Bf5! 10. Rac1 b5! 11. Nc3 Bc5+ 12. Kg2 Nxe5° Euwe - Capablanca,(London,1922)

Byvshev - Simagin (Lvov,1951)



Seizing space, one should not forget that the conquered territory may appear insufficiently protected.

1. f4?! White is on hurry to occupy extra space, but his pieces cannot support the advanced pawns in time.

[¹ 1. Bf4;
1. h3... ♣å3²]

1... d5!! (õ'`7-g1) 2. cd Bc5+ 3. Kh1 Ng4
4. Qe1™ cd 5. Bxd7 Qxd7 6. h3

[6. Nxd5 f5! 7. h3 fe!]

6... d4!

[6... Nf6? 7. e5f]

7. hg dc 8. Qxc3 Bd4 9. Qf3 Rab8©f
(õçh1, b2) 10. Rd1 c5 11. Be3! Rxb2 12.
Rac1 Qa4 13. f5?

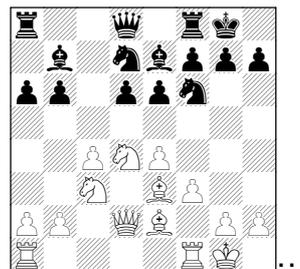
[13. Bxd4 cd 14. e5 Qxa2 15. Rxd4³]

13... Bxe3 14. Qxe3 Rb4! (õ'`4-h4) 15.
Re1 Re8 16. Rxc5 h6 17. e5! Rxc4 18. e6
fe 19. fe Qxa2 20. Qe2 Qa4! 21. e7

[¹ 21. Rh5µ]

21... Rh4+ 22. Kg1 Qd4+ 23. Qe3 Rxe7!
24. Rc8+ Kh7 25. Qxd4 Rxe1+ 26. Kf2
Rxd4 27. Kxe1 a5° Byvshev - Simagin,
(Lvov,1951)

Polugaevsky - Ljubojevic (Bugojno,1980)



When you have a space advantage, you should not always start your attacking actions immediately. Sometimes, it is better to prevent opponent's liberating moves and to gradually squeeze his position.

1. Rfd1 Re8 2. Bf1! Bf8 3. Rac1 White harmoniously places his pieces preparing to face the liberating pawn moves b5-b5 and d6-d5. 3... Qc7 4. b4! The c4-pawn is reliably protected by the f1-bishop and White is tightening the squeeze. 4... Rac8 5. a3 Qb8 6. Nb3! (... £f2 xb6) h6 7. Qf2! Bc6 8. h3 Be7 9. Rb1! (... à3-à4-à5f«) Qc7 10. Rdc1! (õ£ñ7;... ¢d5) Qa7

[¹ 10... Qd8]

11. a4! d5 12. ed ed 13. a5! Bxb4?!

[13... Bd8 14. cd± x!c8;

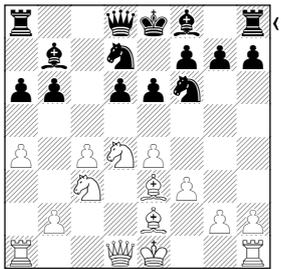
13... dc 14. ab Qb8 15. Bxc4 Bxf3 16. Bxf7+ Kxf7 17. Qxf3±]

14. ab Qb8 15. c5! Bb7

[15... a5 16. Na2 Ba3 17. Nxa5!□]

16. Bd4 Re6 17. Na2! Ba3 18. Rc3□ Rd8
19. Na5 Bxc5 20. Bxc5 Nxc5 21. Qxc5 d4
22. Nxb7 Qxb7 23. Qc7 Rb8 24. Qxb7
Rxb7 25. Rc8+ Kh7 26. Bd3+ g6 27. Rc7
Rbxb6 28. Rxf7+ Kg8 29. Rb7 Rxb1+ 30.
Rxb1 1:0,Polugaevsky - Ljubojevic,
(Bugojno,1980)

Pomar - Gheorghiu (Kosta del Sol,1973)



In the constrained positions the defending side aims to accomplish the liberating advances. However, one should get free gradually. Too hasty opening up of position may lead to undesirable rise of the opponent's pieces activity.

1... d5?!

[Better is 1... Be7 2. O-O O-O waiting for a good opportunity to get free.]

2. ed ed 3. O-O! dc 4. Bxc4 Ne5

[1 4... Be7 5. Nf5 O-O 6. Nxe7+ Qxe7 7. Re1²-]

5. Re1! Qc7

[5... Be7 6. Bg5!,]

6. Rc1 Qxc4 7. Ncb5 Qd3

[7... ab 8. Rxc4 Nxc4 9. Bf4+□]

8. Nc7+ Kd8 9. Nxa8 Bxa8

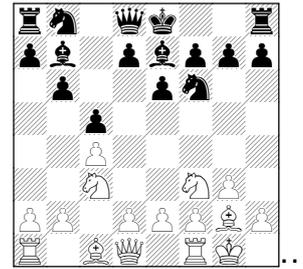
[9... Qxd1 10. Rxd1 Bxa8 11. Nf5+ Ned7 12. Bxb6+ Ke8 13. Rc8#]

10. Nf5 Nfd7 11. f4! Qxf5

[1 11... Qxd1 12. Rxd1 Nc6 13. Bxb6+ Kc8±]

12. Bxb6+ Ke7 13. Rc7! Be4 14. Rxe4 Qxe4 15. fe Ke6 16. Qxd7+ Kxe5 17. Qe8+ 1:0, Pomar - Georghiu, (Kosta del Sol,1973)

Huebner R. - Kasparov (Tilburg,1981)

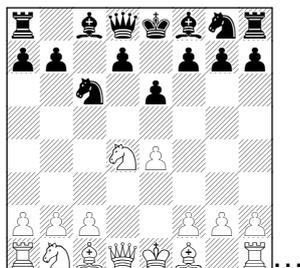


There was a time when opening systems leading to constrained positions considered dubious. However, modern grandmasters often choose such openings voluntary, relying upon potential energy of the constricted positions. One of these openings is the "hedgehog" system which occurs in different openings - English opening, Sicilian, Queen's Indian. World champion Garry Kasparov is one of its adherents.

1. d4 cd 2. Qxd4 d6! 3. b3 O-O 4. e4 Nbd7 5. Qe3 a6! Black agrees to give extra space to his opponent, placing his pawns on a6, b6, d6 and e6, which characterizes the "hedgehog". 6. Nd4 Qc7 7. Bb2 Rfe8! 8. h3 Bf8! 9. Rfe1 Rad8 10. Re2 g6 11. Rae1 Qb8 12. Qd2 Bg7 Black harmoniously places his pieces, waiting for a good opportunity to counter-attack. 13. Qd1 Nc5 14. Bc1 Rc8! 15. Bg5 h6 16. Bc1 Red8! 17. Bb2 b5!! 18. cb d5!! 19. ed Nxd5 20. Nxd5 Bxd5 21. b4 Bxg2 22. Kxg2 e5 23. bc ed 24. Rd2 Rxc5 25. ba Qa8+ 26. Qf3 Qxa6µ (õà2, žd4) 27. Red1 Rf5 28. Qe4 Qa4 29. a3 Re8 30. Qb7 Rd8 31. Rd3 h5! (õçg2) 32. R1d2 Qe8! 33. Kf1 Rb8 34. Qc7 Rxb2! 35. Rxb2 Qe4 36. Qc4 Qh1+ 37. Ke2 Qg1 38. Rb8+ Kh7 39. f4 h4 40. Rb5

Rxb5 41. Qxb5 hg 42. Qg5 Qf2+ 43. Kd1
Qf1+ 0:1, Huebner R. - Kasparov,
(Tilburg, 1981)

Gufeld - Kasparov (Baku, 1980)



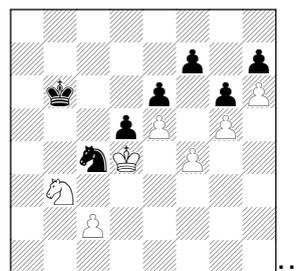
In the following game the "hedgehog" occurred in the Scheveningen variation of the Sicilian Defense.

1. Nb5 d6 2. c4! 2† Nf6 3. N1c3 a6 4. Na3
Be7 5. Be2 O-O 6. O-O b6 7. Be3 Ne5! 8.
Qb3 Ned7! The knight is transferred to a
flexible position on d7 where it defends
the weak b6-pawn. 9. Rfd1 Qc7 10. f3
Bb7 11. Kh1 Rac8 12. Rd2 Nc5 13. Qd1
Rfd8 14. Rc1 Qb8 15. Qg1 d5! 16. ed ed
17. Rcd1 dc 18. Rxd8+ Rxd8 19. Rxd8+
Qxd8 20. Nxc4 Qc7³ 21. a4 Nd5! 22.
Nxd5 Bxd5 23. Qd1 Be6 24. Qd4 Bf6

[24... a5! 25. Ne5 Bf6 26. f4 Nd7 27.
Bb5 Nxe5 28. fe Bxe5 29. Qxb6 Bxh2µ
Kasparov]

25. Qd6! = Qxd6 26. Nxd6 Nxa4 27. Bxa6
Be7 28. Ne4 f5 29. Nc3 1/2:1/2, Gufeld -
Kasparov, (Baku, 1980)

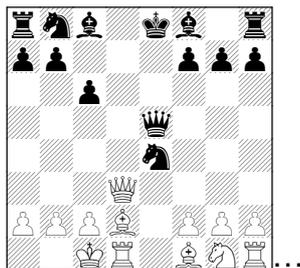
Salo - Kupper I. (Helsinki, 1986)



In conclusion of this chapter let us demonstrate the importance of space advantage in the endgame. The pawns, which are advanced far, secure a space superiority and create preconditions for promotion.

1. Kd3! Kb5 2. Nd4+ Kc5 3. Nf3! (...
ϕf3-h2-g4 xh7) Nb6 4. Nh2! Nd7 5. Ng4
Kb4 6. Kd4 Kb5 7. Ne3 Nb6 8. f5!! A
breakthrough that has become possible
thanks to White's advanced pawns. 8... gf
9. Nxf5! ef 10. e6! fe 11. g6! e5+ 12. Kd3
hg 13. h7 Kc5 14. h8Q e4+ 15. Kc3
1:0, Salo - Kupper I. , (Helsinki, 1986)

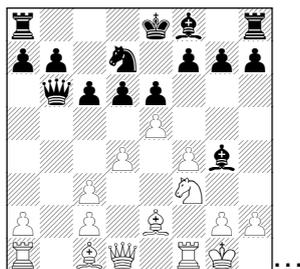
ATTACK ON THE KING



ATTACK ON THE KING.

9. Qd8+!! Kxd8 10. Bg5+ 1:0, Reti - Tartakower, Vienna 1910

ATTACK ON THE UNCASTLED KING



ATTACK ON THE UNCASTLED KING

King's positioning is a very significant factor for correct assessment of situation on the board. Neither material advantage nor positional benefits are important when your king is under crushing attack. That is why in the opening both sides try to castle as soon as possible. Struggle for the center evolves from the very first moves, and if a player delays castling, his king may turn out to be in danger.

1. Ng5! Bxe2 2. Qxe2 h6 3. Nxf7!! Sacrificing a piece, White prevents the black king's evacuation from the center. 3... Kxf7 4. f5! de 5. fe+ Kxe6 6. Rb1!!

Qxb1

[6... Qa6 7. Qg4+ Kd6 8. de+ Kc7 9. Bf4! □;

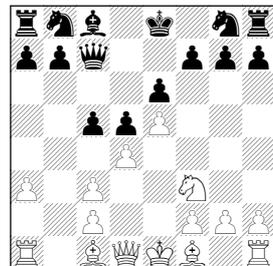
6... Qa5 7. Rxb7□]

7. Qc4+ Kd6 8. Ba3+ Kc7 9. Rxb1 Bxa3 10. Qb3! Be7 11. Qxb7+ Kd6 12. de+ Nxe5 13. Rd1+ Ke6 14. Qb3+ Kf5 15. Rf1+ Ke4 16. Re1+ Kf5 17. g4+! Kf6 18. Rf1+ Kg6 19. Qe6+ Kh7

[19... Bf6 20. Qf5+ Kf7 21. Qxe5□]

20. Qxe5□ Tal - Simagin, (USSR,1956)

Tal - Donner (Bewerwijk,1968)



Naturally, grandmasters understand how dangerous is playing with the uncastled king, but sometimes it is so tempting to save a tempo on castling for reaching some strategic aim...

1... b6 (... ♣à6) First of all Black intends to solve the problem of his bad "French" bishop. 2. a4! Ba6 3. Bxa6! Nxa6 4. Qe2 Nb8 Black had exchanged his bad bishop, but now he is behind in development. White must open lines for an attack as soon as possible.

[4... cd 5. Qb5+ Kd8 6. Qxa6 Qxc3+ 7. Ke2 Qxa1 8. Bg5+□;

4... c4 5. Ba3±]

5. a5! ba

[5... cd 6. O-O! ♝f]

6. Ba3! Nd7 7. dc Ne7 8. c6! Having sacrificed two pawns, White managed to detain the black king in the center. 8... Qxc6 9. O-O Qxc3 10. Rfd1(... ♡f3-d4-b5-d6) Nc6 11. Bd6 Qc4 12. Qe3 Qe4 13. Qb3 Nb6 14. c4! Qxc4

[14... Nxc4 15. Qb7□;

14... dc 15. Qb5 Rc8 16. Rxa5... !a7□;

14... a4 15. Rxa4! (15. Qb5 Qxc4°)

15... dc 16. Qxb6! ab 17. Rxa8+ Nd8 18. Rc8□]

15. Qa3 Qa6 16. Rac1 Rc8 17. Nd2! (... ♡d2-b3-c5) f6

[17... Nd4 18. Kh1! Nf5 19. Rxc8+ Qxc8 20. Rc1 Qd8 21. Bc5 f6 22. Qxa5 fe 23. Qxa7 Nd7 24. Ba3 Ne7 25. Rc7... ♡b3,... ♡f3□]

18. ef gf 19. Qf3 Kd7

[19... Kf7 20. Qh5+ Kg7 21. Rc3□;

19... Nd7 20. Qg4 Kd8 21. Qxe6 Re8 22. Qxd5 Qe2 23. Nc4 Qe6 24. Nxa5 Qxd5 25. Nb7#]

20. Qxf6 Rhe8

[20... Kxd6 21. Ne4+ Kc7 22. Nc5 Qe2 23. Qg7+ Kd6 24. Nb7#]

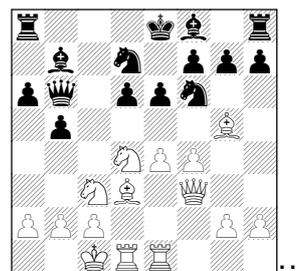
21. Ne4 Ne7

[21... de 22. Qg7+ Ne7 23. Bxe7+ Nd5 24. Bh4+ Kd6 25. Bg3+□]

22. Nc5+ Rxc5 23. Bxc5 Nc4 24. Bxe7 1:0, Tal - Donner, (Bewerwijk, 1968) [...]

[24... Rxe7 25. Rxd5+□]

Chiburdanidze - Dvoirys (Tallinn, 1980)



In many sharp modern opening lines one side delays castling for the sake of grabbing the initiative. One of such openings is the Sicilian Defense. Of course, the methods of fighting against this approach have been worked out. In particular, in the Sicilian, the knight sacrifice on d5 is typical, which opens the e-file for an attack on the uncastled black king.

1. Nd5! ed

[1... Qxd4!? 2. Bxf6 gf 3. Bxb5 Qc5 4. b4 (4. Nxf6+!?) 4... Qxb5! 5. Nc7+ Ke7 6. Nxb5 ab 7. Qd3 Ra6 8. Qxb5 Rb6 9. Qd3 Bh6 10. g3², Mnatsakanian - Georgiev Kr., Yerevan 1982]

2. Nc6!!

[2. ed+ Kd8 3. Nc6+ Kc7]

2... Bxc6

[2... d4 3. e5!]

3. ed+ Be7 4. dc Nc5 5. Bxf6 gf 6. Bf5 Qc7 7. b4 Ne6

[7... Na4 8. Bd7+□]

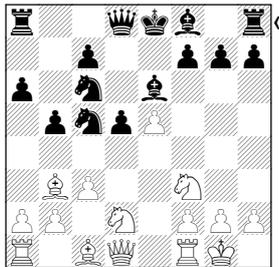
8. Qh5 Ng7 9. Bd7+ Kf8 10. Qh6 d5 11. Rxe7! Kxe7 12. Re1+!

[12. Qxg7? Qxf4+]

12... Kf8 13. Qxf6 White is a pawn down, but this does not matter, as both of Black's rooks do not take part in the battle. Disruption of coordination between the rooks is one of drawbacks of king's

positioning in the center. 13... Kg8 14. Re7 Rf8 15. Be6 Qxe7 16. Qxe7 fe 17. c7 h5 18. Qxf8+ 1:0,Chiburdanidze - Dvoirys, (Tallinn,1980)

Kasparov - Anand (New York,1995)



1... d4 A popular continuation in the Open variation of the Ruy Lopez. Black has not finished his development yet, but makes an attempt to take over the initiative in the center.

[More solid is 1... Be7 2. Bc2 Bg4]

2. Ng5!? Igor Zaitsev's invention.

[2. Bxe6 Nxe6 3. cd Ncxd4]

2... dc

[2... Qxg5!? 3. Qf3 O-O-O (3... Kd7?! 4. Bd5!±) 4. Bxe6+ (4. Qxc6 Qxe5 5. Nf3 Qd5!)=) 4... fe 5. Qxc6 Qxe5 6. b4 Qd5 7. Qxd5 ed 8. bc dc 9. Nb3 d4Ⓞ]

3. Nxe6 fe 4. bc Qd3 5. Bc2!

[5. Nf3 O-O-O!= Kasparov - Anand, New York (World championship match 1995)

5... Qxc3 6. Nb3!! This move, which was prepared in Garry Kasparov's home laboratory, dealt a heavy blow to this line.

6... Nxb3

[6... Rd8 7. Bd2 Qxe5 8. Re1 Qd5 9. Qg4Ⓞ%fⓄ]

7. Bxb3 Nd4

[7... Qxa1 8. Qh5+! g6 9. Qf3 Nd8 (9... O-O-O 10. Qxc6 Qxe5 11. Qxa6+ Kb8 12. Be3Ⓞ) 10. Qf6 Rg8 11. Bxe6 Rg7 12. Ba3 Qxf1+ 13. Kxf1 Bxa3 14. Bd5Ⓞ]

8. Qg4!! Qxa1 9. Bxe6Ⓞ%o, Rd8

[9... Qc3 10. Bd7+ Kf7 11. Be3 Bc5 12. e6+ Kg8 13. e7 g6 14. Qe4! Ne2+ 15. Kh1 Kf7 16. Qd5+ Kg7 17. Bxc5 Qf6 18. Re1 Qc3 19. Qd1 Qxc5 20. Qxe2 Rhe8 21. Qb2+ Kh6 22. Re3! Qd6 23. Rh3+ Kg5 24. Qc1+ Kf6 25. Qa1+! Kg5 26. Rxh7Ⓞ]

10. Bh6! Qc3

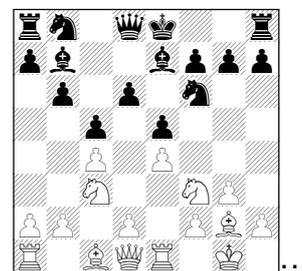
[10... Qxf1+ 11. Kxf1 gh 12. Qh5+Ⓞ]

11. Bxg7 Qd3 12. Bxh8 Qg6

[12... Ne2+ 13. Kh1 Ng3+ 14. hg Qxf1+ 15. Kh2 Qd3 16. Bf5 Qc4 17. Qh3 Qf7 18. e6 Qg8 19. Bf6 Be7 20. Bxh7 Qf8 21. Bg6+Ⓞ]

13. Bf6Ⓞ Kasparov - Anand (New York,1995)

Vaganian - Minasian A. (Moscow,1991)



Usually, in the closed games the king may stay in the center because the e- and d-files are blocked with pawns, and pieces are not in contact. Nevertheless,

one should remember that a closed position may quickly turn into open.

1. Nh4 Nc6 2. Nf5 Bf8?! Black intends to oust the enemy knight from f5 "with all conveniences", keeping his dark-squared bishop. He hopes that the delay of castling is not dangerous in the closed position. 3. Qa4!

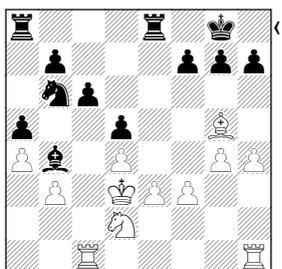
[3. d3 g6 4. Nh6 Nd4 5. Bh3 Nh5 6. Nd5 Bg7 7. Rb1 Nf4 8. Nxf4 Bxh6 9. Ne6 fe 10. Bxh6 Qf6 11. Bg2 O-O-O] Solonar - Ulybin, Berlin 1994]

3... g6 4. d4!! A sudden burst in the center! 4... Nd7

[4... gf 5. d5±; 4... cd 5. Nxd4!! ed 6. e5!!□]

5. de de 6. Nh6 Nd4 7. Nd5± The d-file is opened, and the black king detained in the center determines White's edge. Vaganian - Minasian A, (Moscow,1991)

Karpov - Kasparov (Moscow,1984)

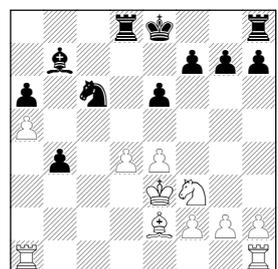


In an endgame, when the queens are exchanged, the kings become active pieces and, as a rule, both opponents should try to centralize their kings. All the same, the king may get into a scrape in the center even in the endgame.

1... c5! Despite absence of queens, the position has a middlegame spirit. Black

opens up the center and proves that the white king is in danger. 2. Bf4 Rac8(... ñ4) 3. dc Nd7! 4. c6 White tries to block the center files. 4... bc 5. Rhd1 Nc5+ 6. Kc2 f6 7. Nf1 Ne6 8. Bg3 Red8 9. Bf2 c5! 10. Nd2 c4! 11. bc Nc5 12. e4 d4! 13. Nb1 d3+ 14. Kb2 d2 0:1, Karpov - Kasparov, (Moscow,1984)

Portisch L. - Pinter J. (Budapest,1984)



In conclusion, here is an example of a beautiful combinational attack on the centralized king in the endgame. It is amusing that Black's king is in the center too and plays an important role in the attack.

1... f5! It is necessary to undermine the white center while White has not finished mobilization of all his forces. 2. ef ef 3. Bc4 Ke7 4. d5 Kf6!

[4... Nb8 5. Kd4!±]

5. dc Rhe8+ 6. Kf4 Re4+ 7. Kg3 Bc8! 8. Rac1 Rg4+ 9. Kh3 f4 10. Ne5?

[10. Bxa6! Rg3+ (10... Bf5 11. Rc5!□; 10... Be6 11. Rhe1! Rg3+ 12. Kh4 Rg4+ 13. Kh3=) 11. Kh4 Rg4+=]

10... Kg5!!

[10... Kxe5 11. Rhe1+ Kf6 12. Be6!±]

11. Nf7+ Kh5 12. Be2 Rd3+!! 13. g3

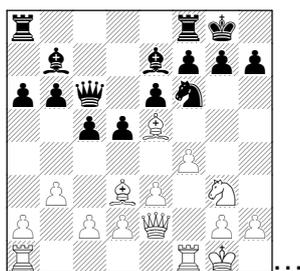
[13. Bf3 Rxf3+ 14. gf Rg3#]

13... f3! 14. Rc5+

[14. Bxf3 Rxf3 15. Kg2 Rxf7°]

14... Rg5+! 15. g4+ Bxg4+ 16. Kg3 fe+
0:1,Portish L. - Pinter J. (Budapest,1984)

ATTACK ON THE KING WHEN BOTH OPPONENTS CASTLED TO THE SAME SIDE



ATTACK ON THE KING WHEN BOTH OPPONENTS CASTLED TO THE SAME SIDE

Attack on the opponent's king is the most aggressive and attractive plan. From the very first moves we keep an eye on the enemy king. Even after the king is castled, this does not guarantee it an absolute safety. The XIX century masters worked out the tactical and strategic methods of organizing an attack on the king in the positions with mutual kingside castlings. One of these typical combinational attacks involves bishop sacrifices on h7 and g7.

1. Nh5! White exchanges the sole defender of the black king. 1... Nxh5

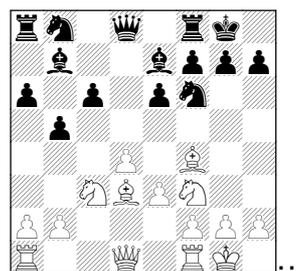
[1... h6 2. Bxf6 Bxf6 3. Nxf6+ gf 4. Qg4+ Kh8 5. Qh4 Kg7 6. Rf3 Rfd8 7. Rg3+ Kf8 8. Qxh6+□;

1... d4 2. Bxf6 Bxf6 3. Qg4 Kh8 4. Rf3

Rg8 5. Bxh7 Rgd8 6. Qh3 Be7 7. Be4□]

2. Bxh7+! Kxh7 3. Qxh5+ Kg8 4. Bxg7!! Kxg7 5. Qg4+ Kh7 6. Rf3 e5 7. Rh3+ Qh6 8. Rxh6+ Kxh6 9. Qd7! Bf6 10. Qxb7□
Lasker E. - Bauer , (Amsterdam,1889)

PIECE ATTACK



Nowadays, typical combinations are well known and it is difficult to implement them against an experienced opponent. However, such combinations may be camouflaged with the preliminary actions on another flank.

1. Ne4! The struggle evolves for and against the liberating advance c6-c5. 1... Nxe4 2. Bxe4 Nd7 3. Rc1 Rc8 4. Ne5! Nxe5 5. Bxe5 Qd7(... ñ6-ñ5) 6. Rc3! (... £ñ2 ± õñ5,ñ6) c5 7. Bxh7+!! Kxh7 8. Qh5+ Kg8 9. Bxg7!! Kxg7 10. Qg4+ Kf6 11. e4! Bxe4 12. Qxe4 Qxd4 13. Rf3+ Kg7 14. Rg3+ Bg5 15. Qf3!

[15. Rxg5+ Kf6!³]

15... f6

[15... Kg6!²]

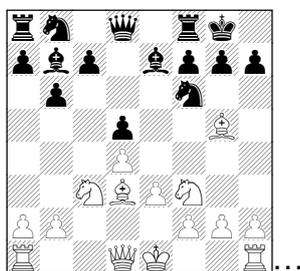
16. Rd1 Qc4 17. Rd7+ Kg6 18. Rg4

[18. h4! Qc1+ (18... Rh8 19. Rxg5+; 18... Qxh4 19. Rh3) 19. Kh2 Rh8 20. Qe4+□]

18... Qc1+ 19. Rd1 Qc2 20. h4 Rcd8 21. Re1 Qd3 22. Qc6 Kh5 23. Ree4 Qd5 24. Qc7 Rd7 25. Qg3 Bh6 26. Kh2 Qf5 27. Qh3! (... !g5,g4□) 27... Qxf2 28. Rg5+ fg 29. hg+ Kxg5 30. Qg4+ 1:0,Umansky M. - Karner, (USSR,1968) [...]

[30... Kf6 31. Rxe6+ Kf7 32. Qg6#]

Phillsbury - Marco (Paris,1900)



A good example of strategic plan of the kingside attack, which was invented by the past masters, is the famous Pillsbury scheme in the Queen's Gambit Declined.

1. Ne5! Nbd7 2. f4! Creating a fortified knight outpost in the center, White intends to use it for the direct kingside attack. 2... c5 3. O-O c4?! Black's queenside counterattack is too sluggish.

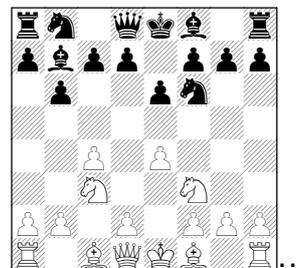
[3... Ne4?! 4. Bxe7 Qxe7 5. Bxe4 de 6. Nxd7 Qxd7 7. dc±, Pillsbury - Von Gottschall, Munich 1900;

3... cd!? 4. ed Ne4]

4. Bc2 a6 5. Qf3! b5 6. Qh3! g6 7. f5! b4 8. fg hg 9. Qh4! bc 10. Nxd7 Qxd7 11. Rxf6! a5 12. Raf1 Ra6 13. Bxg6! fg 14. Rxf8+ Bxf8 15. Rxf8+! Kxf8 16. Qh8+ Kf7 17. Qh7+ 1:0,Pillsbury - Marco, (Paris,1900) [...]

[17... Ke8 18. Qg8#;
17... Ke6 18. Qxg6#]

Romanishin - Petrosian T. (Yerevan,1975)



Space advantage is quite important while attacking on the opponent's king as it allows regrouping offensive forces in the best way.

1. Bd3! An unusual maneuver. Transferring his bishop to the b1-h7 diagonal, White takes under fire the black monarch's future residence. 1... d6 2. Bc2! c5 3. d4 cd 4. Nxd4 Be7 5. O-O O-O 6. b3! Nc6 7. Bb2! ('a1-h8;b1-h7) a6 8. Kh1 Qc7 9. f4 Rad8 10. Rc1 Qb8 11. Rf3! White concentrates his forces on the kingside. 11... g6 12. Nd5!! Positional sacrifice opens all the lines against the black king. 12... ed 13. ed Nxd4 14. Qxd4 Rde8 15. f5! Bd8 16. Qh4! Re5

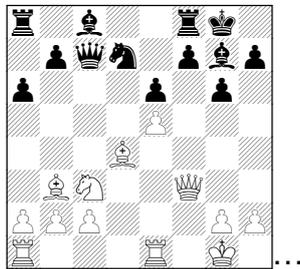
[16... Nh5 17. Qxh5! gh 18. Rg3+ Bg5 19. Rxc5#;

16... Ne4 17. Qxh7+! Kxh7 18. Rh3+ Kg8 19. Rh8#]

17. Qh6 Qc7 18. Rg3! Bc8 19. Bxe5 de 20. fg fg 21. Bxg6! Ng4 22. Bh5 Rf6 23. Qd2 Rf4 24. d6! Qg7 25. d7 Bb7 26. Qxf4! 1:0,Romanishin - Petrosian T. ,

(Yerevan,1975)

Tal - Bilek (Miskolc,1963)



Another important method of attack is exchange of the pieces defending the king's shelter.

1. Ne4! A pawn sacrifice results in exchange of the g7-bishop and weakening of the dark squares in the black kingside.

[1. Qg3 Nc5!]

1... Bxe5

[1... Nxe5? 2. Nf6+]

2. Bxe5 Qxe5 3. Rad1 (... !d7 xf6) Kg7

4. Nd6 Qc5+ 5. Kh1 Ne5

[5... Nf6? 6. Qxf6+! Kxf6 7. Ne4+]

6. Qf4 f6 7. Rf1! (õf6) a5 8. h4!

[8. Ne8+ Rxe8 9. Qxf6+ Kg8 10. Rd8 Rxd8! (10... Bd7? 11. Bxe6+!) 11. Qxd8+ Kg7 12. Qf6+ =]

8... Ra6

[8... a4 9. Ne8+! Rxe8 10. Qxf6+ Kg8 11. Rd8 Rxd8 12. Qxd8+ Kg7 13. Qf6+ Kg8 14. h5 gh 15. Qg5+ Kh8 16. Rf7 Nxf7 17. Qxc5 ab 18. Qf8#]

9. Ne4 Qe7 10. h5 h6

[10... a4 11. h6+];

10... gh 11. Nxf6 Qxf6 12. Qg3+]

11. Qg3 a4 12. Rxf6! Rxf6 13. Qxe5 ab

14. ab! b6 (... !a5)

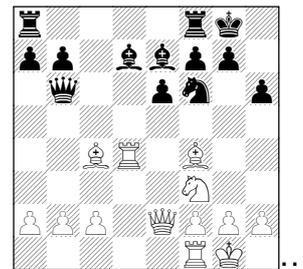
[14... Kf7 15. Nxf6 Qxf6 16. Qc7+];

1 14... gh 15. Nxf6 (15. Rf1 Ra5! =) 15...

Qxf6 16. Qc7+ Kg6 17. Qxc8±]

15. b4! 1:0, Tal - Bilek, (Miskolc,1963)

Tal - Portisch L. (Bled,1965)



As a rule, the best defensive method is to keep the kingside pawns on the second rank. Rather often, defensive pawn's position on the third rank is a good target for destructive sacrifices.

1. Qd2! Bc6 2. Bxh6! Ne4!

[2... gh 3. Qxh6 Bxf3 4. Qg5+ Kh8 5. Rh4+ Nh7 (5... Bh5 6. Bd3! ... !h5) 6. Qxe7 Rg8 7. Qf6+]

3. Qf4 gh 4. Rxe4!

[4. Qxh6 Rad8! (4... Bc5 5. Ng5! ; 4... Qc5 5. Bd3! ; 4... Rfd8 5. Bxe6!) 5. Bxe6 Rxd4 6. Bf5 Nf6 7. Qg5+ =]

4... Bxe4 5. Qxe4 Rad8

[5... Qxb2? 6. Ne5]

6. b3!© (õçg8)

[6. Bd3 Rxd3! 7. Qxd3 Qxb2 =]

6... Bc5 7. Qf4

[7. c3! (xd4) ©,]

7... Kg7 8. Qe5+ f6 9. Qg3+ Kh7 10. Re1 Rg8?!

[10... Bb4! 11. c3 Bxc3 12. Nh4 Bxe1 13. Qg6+ =]

11. Qh4 Rd6 12. Kf1 f5 13. h3 Rg6 14. g4! Rd7

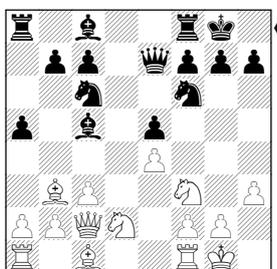
[14... fg 15. hg Qc6 16. Ne5□]

15. Rxe6!

[15. Bxe6!? Bxf2! 16. Qxf2 Rxe6 17. Ng5+! hg 18. Qxf5+ Rg6 19. Qxd7+ Kh6 20. Kg2□]

15... Rd1+ 16. Kg2 Rxe6 17. Bxe6 fg 18. Qxg4 Rd8 19. Ne5 1:0,Tal -Portish L. (Bled,1965)

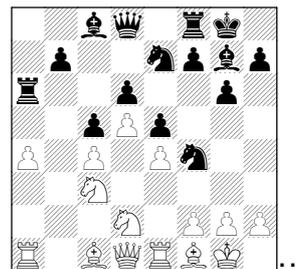
Psakhis - Chekhov (Vilnius,1980)



In this example the destructive sacrifice became possible thanks to the powerful knight's position on f4. Garry Kasparov once said that the knight on f5 compensates being a pawn down!

1... Nh5! (õf4) 2. Nc4 Qf6(... ¥h3) 3. Kh2 Nf4 4. Be3 Nxc4!! 5. Kxg2 Bxh3+! 6. Kxh3 Qxf3+ 7. Kh2 Ra6! A typical method - the rook joins the attack via the third rank. 8. Qd1 Qxe4 9. Rg1 Qh4+ 10. Kg2 Nd4! 11. cd ed 12. Bg5 Qxg5+ 13. Kf1 Qf5 14. Bc2 Qh3+ 15. Rg2 Rf6 16. Qd3 Rf3 17. Qxh7+ Qxh7 18. Bxh7+ Kxh7 0:1,Psakhis - Chekhov, (Vilnius,1980)

Kramnik - Kasparov (Novgorod,1997)



In a similar way White's rook joins an attack via the third rank in the popular line of the King's Indian.

1. Ra3! Black's plan involves an advance of his kingside pawns. This strategy sometimes backfires because the black king shelter is weakened. In this case the white rook would find a job on the third rank. 1... g5!? 2. g3 Nh3+

[2... Nfg6? 3. Qh5 f5 4. ef Nxf5 5. Nde4±]

3. Bxh3 Bxh3 4. Qh5 Qd7 5. Qxg5 h6 6. Qe3 f5© 7. Qe2 f4 8. Nb5 Kh7 9. gf! ef 10. Kh1! Bg4 11. Nf3! Ng6 12. Rg1 Bxf3+?

[12... Kh8! 13. Bb2 Rg8›]

13. Qxf3 Ne5 14. Qh5 Qf7

[14... Nxc4 15. Qg6+ Kh8 16. Rh3!□]

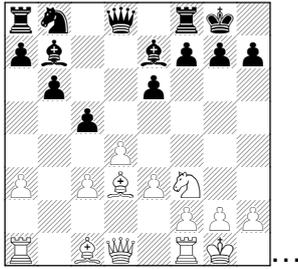
15. Qh3! Nxc4 16. Rf3 Be5 17. Nc7!! Rxa4

[17... Qxc7 18. Qxh6+! Kxh6 19. Rh3#]

18. Bxf4! 1:0,Kramnik - Kasparov, (Novgorod,1997) [...]

[18... Bxf4 19. Ne6 Rg8 20. Rxg8 Qxg8 21. Qf5+ Kh8 22. Qf6+ Kh7 23. Nf8+□]

Polugaevsky - Petrosian T. (Moscow,1981)



An important resource to intensify White's kingside onslaught is the h-pawn march which allows to loosen the black king shelter.

1. Qc2! This move forces Black to weaken his kingside castling position. 1... g6 2. e4 Qc7 3. Qe2 Rd8 4. h4! Now, the g6-pawn is a good target that will be attacked with h2-h4-h5. 4... Nc6 5. Be3 Bf6 6. e5! Bg7 7. h5! Rd7 8. hg hg 9. Rad1 cd 10. cd Qd8 11. Be4 Ne7 12. Ng5! Nf5 13. Qg4! Bd5

[13... Bxe4 14. Nxe4 Nxd4? 15. Bxd4 Rxd4 16. Rxd4 Qxd4 17. Nf6+□;

13... Rb8 14. Qh3 Nxe3 15. Qh7+ Kf8 16. Nxe6+ fe 17. fe+□]

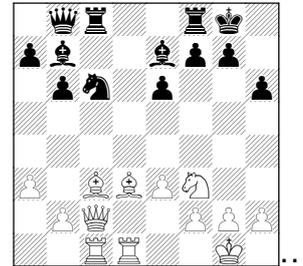
14. Bxf5! The f5-knight is more important for defense than the d5-bishop. 14... gf 15. Qh5 f6 16. Qh7+ Kf8 17. Nh3 Qe7 18. ef Qxf6 19. Bg5 Qf7 20. Nf4 Bf6 21. Qh6+ Ke7

[21... Bg7 22. Qh3... !d1-d3-g3]

22. Rc1! Rad8 23. Rfe1! Bxg5 24. Qxg5+ Qf6 25. Ng6+ Kf7 26. Ne5+ Ke7 27. Ng6+ Kf7 28. Ne5+ Ke7 29. Qxf6+ Kxf6 30. Nxd7+ Rxd7 31. f3 b5 32. Kf2 Rb7 33. Rh1 Rb6 34. Rc7 Ra6 35. f4! 1:0, Polugaevsky - Petrosian T., (Moscow, 1981) [...]

[35... Kg6 36. Rch7 Rxa3 37. R1h6#]

Petrosian T. - Smyslov (Moscow, 1961)



Loosening of the opponent's king pawn shelter is a typical method.

1. Qa4! Rfd8 2. Qe4! g6 3. Qg4! h5

[3... Kh7 4. Bxg6+! fg 5. Qxe6 Rf8 6. Rd7 Rce8 (6... Rc7 7. Ne5□) 7. Ng5+! hg 8. Qh3+ Kg8 9. Qh8+ Kf7 10. Qf6+ Kg8 11. Qg7#]

4. Qh3 f5

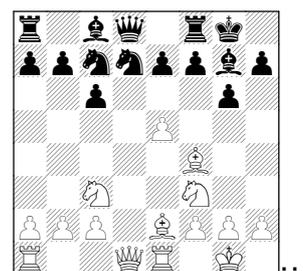
[4... Rd6 5. g4! Rcd8 6. gh Rxd3 7. Rxd3 Rxd3 8. hg fg 9. Qh8+ Kf7 10. Ne5+□]

5. Bc4 Rxd1+ 6. Rxd1 Kf7 7. e4! (õå6) Qf4 8. Re1! Qg4 9. ef! Qxc4 10. fg+ Ke8

[10... Kxg6 11. Rxe6+ Kf7 12. Rxc6! □]

11. g7 e5 12. Qxh5+ Kd7 13. Rd1+ Bd6 14. Bxe5 Nd4 15. Nxd4 1:0, Petrosian T. - Smyslov, (Moscow, 1961)

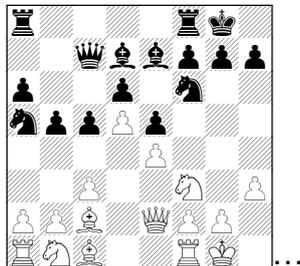
Luhter T. - Shmaltz (Bremen, 1998)



Let us conclude this theme with a beautiful example in which White implemented several typical methods, such as exchange of the fianchettoed bishop, rook's transferring to the kingside, and a sacrifice, destroying the king's pawn shelter.

1. Qc1! Ne6 2. Bh6! Qb6 3. Bxg7 Kxg7 4. a4 a5 5. Bc4 Nd4 6. Nxd4 Qxd4 7. Re4! Qc5 8. Rh4! h5 9. Rxh5! gh 10. Qg5+ Kh8 11. Qxh5+ Kg7 12. Qg5+ Kh8 13. Re1! Qxc4 14. Re3 Qe6 15. Qh4+ Kg7 16. Rg3+ Qg6 17. Qxe7 Qxg3 18. hg c5 19. Qg5+ Kh7 20. Ne4 Rg8 21. Qh5+ Kg7 22. Nd6 1:0, Luhter T. - Shmaltz, (Bremen,1998)

PAWN STORM



ATTACK WITH PAWNS AND PIECES

In spite of the fact that both kings are on the same flank, the pawns may be used for an attack on the opponent's king. The pawn advance clears a way for the pieces to the enemy king residence. The obvious drawback of this method is that the attacking player weakens his own king's shelter. So the pawn storm is usually launched in the positions with the closed center which hampers defending player's

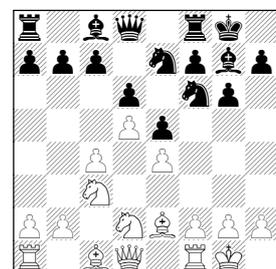
counterplay against the attacking player's king.

1. Kh1! c4 2. Rg1! White prepares a typical for the Ruy Lopez kingside attack. He concentrates his forces on the kingside with g2-g4 followed by the b1-knight transferring to e3 and doubling his rooks on the g-file. This prepares a standard knight sacrifice on f5. 2... Ne8 3. g4! Nb7 4. Nbd2 g6 5. Nf1 Ng7 6. Bh6 f6 7. Ne3 Kh8

[7... Nd8 8. Nf5! gf 9. Bxg7 Kxg7 10. gf+ Kh8 11. Nh4! Nf7 (11... Be8 12. Qg4) 12. Ng6+ hg 13. Rxc6]

8. Rg3 Rg8 9. Rag1 Nd8 10. Nf5!! Bf8 [10... gf 11. gf Bf8 12. Nh4! Be8 (12... Nf7 13. Qh5) 13. Bd2 Nf7 14. Qf3 Ra7 15. Rg4 a5 16. Ng6+! hg 17. fg] 11. Bxg7+ Bxg7 12. g5! Rf8 13. h4! (... h5) gf 14. gf Bxf6 15. ef Qc8 16. Ng5! Bxg5 17. Rxc6 Nf7 18. Rh5 Rg8 19. Rxh7+! Kxh7 20. Qh5+ Nh6 21. Rg6 Qf8 22. Rxh6+! Qxh6 23. f6+ e4 24. Bxe4+ 1:0, Dubinin - Suetin, (USSR,1950)

Ftachnik - Cvitan (Germany,1997)



Kingside storm with pawns and pieces is a leitmotif of Black's strategy in the Aronin-Taimanov system of the King's

Indian.

1... Ne8 2. b4 f5! 3. c5 Nf6

[3... f4? 4. Bg4!±]

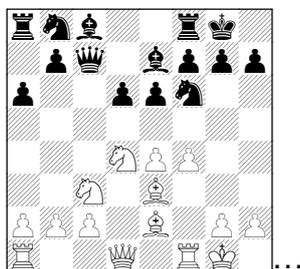
4. f3 f4! 5. Nc4 g5! 6. a4 Ng6 7. Ba3 Rf7
8. b5 dc 9. Bxc5 h5! 10. a5 g4! 11. b6 It
looks like White takes the lead in
developing initiative. But one should not
forget that Black's objective is the white
king! 11... g3! 12. Kh1 Nh7! 13. d6 Qh4
14. Bg1 Bh3! 15. bc?

[15. gh! Qxh3 16. Rf2 gf 17. Bxf2]

15... Bxg2+! 16. Kxg2 Qh3+!! 17. Kxh3
Ng5+ 18. Kg2 Nh4+ 0:1, Ftachnik -
Cvitan, (Germany,1997) [...]

[19. Kh1 g2#]

Kasparov - Anand (Moscow,1996)



The kingside pawn advance is possible
even in the semi-open positions if the
attacking player has a reliable control
over the center.

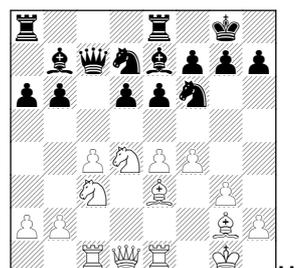
1. g4! Re8

[1... d5 2. e5! Ne4 3. Nxe4 de 4. Qe1
b5 5. Rc1² F. Olafsson - Stein,
Stockholm (interzonal)1962]

2. g5 Nfd7 3. Bd3 Nc6 4. Qh5! g6 5. Qh4
Bf8 6. Rf3! Bg7 7. Nde2 b5 8. Rh3 Nf8 9.
f5! Ne5 10. f6 Bh8 11. a3± (õ¥h8) Rb8

12. b4 Bb7 13. Rf1 Rbc8 14. Bd4 Nc6 15.
Be3 Ne5 16. Rf4 Qd7 17. Qh6 Nxd3 18.
cd e5 19. Rf1 Rc7 20. Bb6 Rc6 21. Nd5
Bc8 22. Re3 Qb7 23. Bd8 Ne6 24. Ne7+
Rxe7 25. fe Qd7 26. Rh3 1:0, Kasparov -
Anand, (Moscow,1996)

Iskusnykh - Shipov (Russia,1998)



While attacking on the kingside in the
positions with the semi-open center, the
attacking player should take great care.
Opponent's counter-blow in the center
may refute the attack and demonstrate
weakness of the attacking player's
exposed king position.

1. g4

[1. Bf2!?]

1... h6!

[1... Nc5 2. Bf2 d5 3. ed Qxf4 4. de
Nxg4 5. Bg3!±]

2. h4?

[2. g5!? hg 3. fg Nh7 4. g6]

2... Nc5! 3. Bf2 d5!

[3... e5? 4. fe de 5. Nf5±,]

4. e5

[4. ed Qxf4 5. de Nxg4!µ]

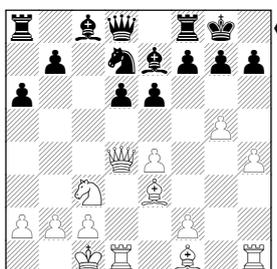
4... Nfe4 5. cd

[5. Bxe4 deµ... µd3;

5. g5 Nxf2 6. Kxf2 dcµ]

5... Nxf2 6. Kxf2 Bxh4+ 7. Ke3
 [7. Kg1 Bxe1 8. d6 Qb8 9. Qxe1 Nd3°;
 7. Ke2 Bxe1 8. d6 Qb8 9. Bxb7 Bxc3
 10. Bxa8 Bxd4°]
 7... Bxe1 8. Qxe1 ed 9. b4 Qd7 10. Qd1
 Rad8 11. Nce2 Ne4° Iskusnykh - Shipov,
 (Russia,1998)

ATTACK ON THE KING IN POSITIONS WITH OPPOSITE SIDE CASTLING

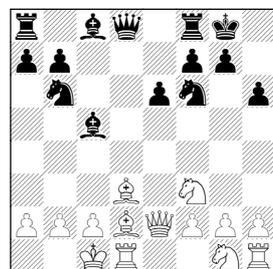


ATTACK ON THE KING IN POSITIONS WITH OPPOSITE SIDE CASTLING

1... b5 2. Rg1(... h4-h5,g5-g6) Rb8!(...
 b5-b4) 3. h5 b4 4. Nd5!
 [4. Ne2 e5!? 5. Qc4! Nc5! 6. Bxc5 Qc7
 7. Nd4! dc 8. Nf5 Be6°]
 4... ed 5. h6 Ne5!
 [5... f6? 6. Qxd5+ Rf7 7. g6! hg 8.
 Qxf7+!! Kxf7 9. Bc4+ Kf8 10. h7□]
 6. f4 Qc7 7. ed
 [7. hg Rd8 8. fe de5 9. Qa7 Qxa7 10.
 Bxa7 Rb7μ]
 7... Bf5! 8. Rg2 Rfc8! 9. Rdd2
 [9. Bxa6 Bxc2 10. Bxc8 Be4+°]
 9... b3! 10. ab Rxb3 11. Kd1
 [11. fe de 12. Qa7 Qa5 13. Qxa6
 Rxc2+! 14. Rxc2 Qe1#]
 11... Bf6!! 12. cb
 [12. gf Nf3! 13. Rxc7+ Kh8°]

12... Qc1+ 13. Ke2 Nf3! 14. Qb4
 [14. Qa4! Nxd2 15. Bxd2 Bd3+! 16.
 Kxd3 Qxf1+ 17. Re2 Bxb2fõçd3]
 14... Re8! 15. Kxf3 Qxf1+ 16. Bf2 Qh1 17.
 Bg1
 [17. gf Qh5+ 18. Kg3 Qh3#;
 17. Bg3 g6! 18. gf Bg4+! 19. Kxg4
 Qh5#;
 17. Ba7! Qh5+ 18. Kg3 Qg4+ 19. Kf2
 Qh4+ 20. Kf3 Be4+ 21. Qxe4 Qh5+ 22.
 Ke3 Qh3+μ]
 17... Qh3+ 18. Rg3 Qf1+ 19. Rf2 Re3+
 0:1, Pokojevchik - G.
 Timoshchenko,(Polanica Zdroj, 1979)
 [...]
 [20. Kxe3 Qd3#]

PIECE ATTACK



Impetuous pawn storms are the most typical for positions with opposite side castling. However, sometimes a piece attack turns out more effective.

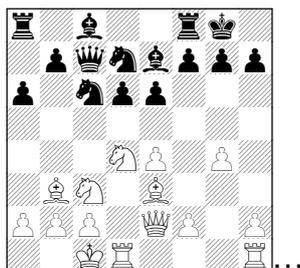
1... Na4! It looks like White has an edge because of the black pawn on h6. Nevertheless, Black manages to detect a weakness in the white castling position, namely the b2-pawn, and his piece attack turns out more dangerous. 2. Bb5 Bd7 3.

Bxd7 Qxd7 4. Nh3

[4. Bxh6 Qc7 5. Bg5 Qb6 6. c3 Ba3!μ,]
4... Rac8 5. Kb1 Qc6!(... £b6) 6. Bc1
Nd5(... ¢ñ3) 7. Qc4 Rfd8 8. Ka1 b5! 9.
Qe4 Be7! 10. c3 Qa6 11. Ne5 Bf6 12.
Ng4 Naxc3! 13. bc Bxc3+ 14. Bb2 Rc4
15. Qf3 Bxb2+ 16. Kxb2 Rc2+! 17. Kxc2
Qxa2+ 18. Kd3 Qc4+ 0:1, Georgiev K. -
Adams , (Groningen,1993) [...]

[19. Kd2 Nb4+ 20. Ke1 (20. Ke3 Nc2#)
20... Nc2#]

Velimirovic - Bukal (Yugoslavia,1971)



In this game White sacrificed a piece for the sake of opening files and gaining the initiative.

1. Nf5! This knight sacrifice, introduced to practice in this game, has become a main line in the Velimirovic attack. 1... ef

[1... Nc5!›]

2. Nd5 Qd8 3. gf Na5

[3... Nf6! 4. Bb6 Qd7 5. Rhg1 Nxd5 6.
ed Bf6! (6... Ne5 7. f4,) 7. dc Qxc6 8.
Bd4 Bxd4 9. Rxd4 Bxf5 10. Rd5 Rae8
11. Qd2 Re5 12. Rxd6 Qe8 13. Rxc7+!
Kxc7 14. Qh6+ Kg8 15. Qg5+ Bg6 16.
Rxc7+ hg 17. Qxc7+ Kh8 18. Qh6+
1/2, Nunn - Chandler, London 1984]

4. Nxe7+

[4. Rhg1! Nxb3+ 5. ab Kh8 6. Bd4 f6 7.
Qg4 Rg8 8. Nf4 Ne5 9. Bxe5 fe 10.
Ng6+! hg 11. Qh3+ Bh4 12. Rxd6 Qe7
13. Rxc7±©, Velimirovic]

4... Qxe7 5. Bd5 Kh8

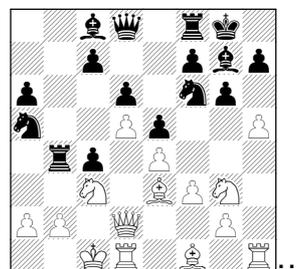
[5... Nf6 6. Rhg1 Nxd5 7. Rxd5 Qxe4 8.
Rxc7+! Kh8 9. Rxc7+! Kxc7 10. Qh5+
Kg8 11. f6□]

6. Rhg1 Nf6 7. Qf3 Nxd5 8. Rxd5 Nc4

[8... Nc6!›]

9. f6! Qxf6 10. Qxf6! gf 11. Bd4 Ne5 12.
f4 Nd7 13. Rxd6 Rg8 14. Rd1 Re8 15. f5
Rxe4 16. Rg1!(... lf6□) h5 17. Rg5! Rg4
18. Rxf6! Rg1+ 19. Kd2 Rg2+ 20. Ke3
1:0, Velimirovic - Bukal, (Yugoslavia,
1971)

Kasparov - Loginov V. (Manila,1992)



Speed of attack is not the only decisive factor in positions with mutual pawn storms. It is also necessary to reasonably combine attack and defense.

1. Bh6 Bxh6 2. Qxh6 Qe7 3. Be2 Bd7 4.
Nf1! (... ¢f1-e3,g2-g4) Rfb8 5. Rd2 c5 6.
Bd1!!

[6. g4 Ba4!... £b7,,]

6... Ne8

[6... Be8 7. g4 Qb7 8. Rhh2!...

♠f1-e3-f5,»]

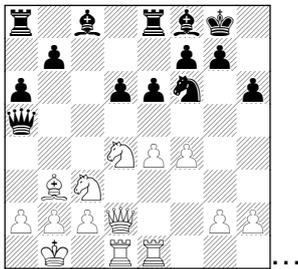
7. hg fg 8. g4 Qg7 9. g5 Qxh6 10. Rxh6 Ng7 11. f4! Though the queens are exchanged, White's attack develops by itself, while the black a5-knight is simply offside.

[11. Rdh2 Nh5 12. Ng3]

11... ef 12. Rdh2 Re8 13. Nd2 Reb8 14. Rxh7 Rxb2 15. R2h4 R2b7 16. Rh8+ Kf7 17. Rxf4+ Ke7 18. Rh7 Rg8 19. Rf6 Be8 20. e5 Rb6 21. Nde4 Nb7 22. ed+ Nxd6 23. Re6+ 1:0, Kasparov - Loginov V., (Manila,1992) [...]

[23... Kd7 24. Nf6+□]

PAWN STORM



ATTACK ON THE KING IN POSITIONS WITH OPPOSITE SIDE CASTLING

As a rule, mutual pawn storms are typical for positions of this kind. Both players strive to weaken opponent's king shelter as soon as possible. It may be quite dangerous if the castling position is loosened by some pawn's placing on the third rank as this makes easier for the opponent to open up the files.

1. g4! A pawn sacrifice for the sake of opening the g-file. Even if Black rejected

to accept this sacrifice, White would open the kingside files with g4-g5 due to the black pawn standing on h6. 1... Nxg4 2. Qg2 Nf6 3. Rg1 Bd7 4. f5! (♟'b3-g8) Kh8 5. Rdf1 Qd8 6. fe fe 7. e5!! de 8. Ne4! Nh5

[8... Nxe4 9. Rxf8+ Rxf8 10. Qxg7#]

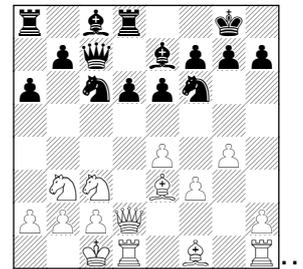
9. Qg6 ed

[9... Nf4 10. Rxf4! ef 11. Nf3! (... ♠fg5□) Qb6 12. Rg5! Bc6 13. Nf6!□]

10. Ng5 1:0, Spassky - Petrosian T. , (Moscow,1969) [...]

[10... hg 11. Qxh5+ Kg8 12. Qf7+ Kh7 13. Rf3 g4 14. Rxc4□]

Tal - Morlok (Varna,1962)



The pawn storm may be effective even if all the pawns covering the king are placed on the second rank. In this case the attacking player's pawns endeavor to get in touch with the defending pawns and to break the shelter.

1. g5 Nd7 2. h4 b5 3. g6! It is very important to launch an attack first. For the sake of quick opening up the files it makes sense to sacrifice a pawn.

[is too slow in view of 3. f4 Nc5 4. Bg2 b4 5. Ne2 a5,]

3... fg

[3... hg 4. h5! gh 5. Rxh5 Nf6 6. Rh1 d5 7. e5! Nxe5 8. Bf4 Bd6 9. Qh2 Kf8 (Tal - Koblenz, Riga,1957) 10. Kb1! ©, Tal]

4. h5! gh 5. Rxh5 Nf6 6. Rg5! Ne5 7. Qg2 Bf8 8. Be2 Nc4 9. Bxc4 bc 10. Nd4 Rb8 11. Rh1 Rb7 12. Rh6! Kf7

[12... g6 13. Rhxg6+ hg 14. Rxg6+ Kf7 15. Qg5 Nh7 16. Qh5 Nf6 17. Rxf6+ Kxf6 18. Nf5!!□ (... ♯g5)]

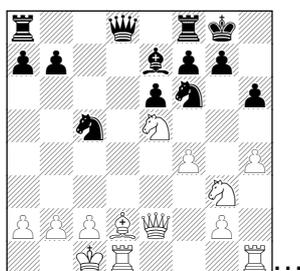
13. Rh4 Qb6 14. Nd1 Qc7 15. f4 h6 16. Rg6 Re8 17. f5 e5 18. Nc3! Qd8

[18... ed 19. Rxf6+! gf 20. Qg6+ Ke7 21. Nd5+□]

19. Nc6 1:0, Tal - Morlok, (Varna,1962) [...]

[19... Qc7 20. Rxf6+!□]

Adams - Leko (Linares,1999)



Although the black pawn is placed on h6, a preparation of the g2-g4-g5 advance would be too slow. So White stakes on a piece attack.

1. Bc3 Qc7

[1... Qb6 2. Ng4! Qa6 3. Nxf6+ Bxf6 4. Qxa6 Nxa6 5. Bxf6 gf 6. f5! Nb4 7. Nh5 Nd5 8. Rhe1± Adams - Magem Badals,

France 1999]

2. f5! ef? This capture grants the white knight the powerful outpost on f5.

[2... Na4!?]

3. Nxf5 Rfe8

[3... Na4 4. Qc4!□... Qxc4 5. Nxe7+]

4. Qf3 Bf8

[4... Nce4 5. Rd7! Nxd7 6. Nxh6+! gh 7. Qxf7+ Kh8 8. Ng6#]

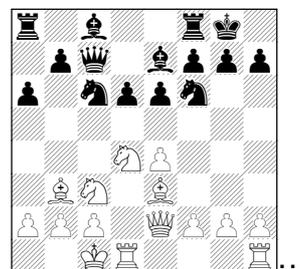
5. Nxh6+! gh 6. Ng4!

[6. Qxf6 Ne4!]

6... Nxg4 7. Qxg4+ Kh7 8. Qf5+ Kg8 9. Qf6 Kh7 10. Qh8+ Kg6 11. h5+ 1:0, Adams - Leko, (Linares,1999) [...]

[11... Kf5 12. Qf6+ Kg4 13. Qf3+ Kg5 14. Bf6#]

Fischer - Larsen (Palma de Malorca,1970)



In positions with opposite side castling, one should play with great energy. A slight delay may give an initiative into opponent's arms.

1. g4 Nd7 2. h4 Nc5 3. g5 b5 4. f3?

[Too sluggish. 4. h5! b4 5. Na4 Nxe4 6. g6!› is better]

4... Bd7!(... b4) 5. Qg2 b4 6. Nce2 Nxb3+ 7. ab a5! 8. g6! fg 9. h5 Nxd4 10. Nxd4 g5! A typical method in similar situations.

Opening up of the h-file would have been more dangerous for Black. 11. Bxg5 Bxg5+ 12. Qxg5 h6 13. Qg4 Rf7! 14. Rhg1

[14. Nxe6? Qc8 15. Rxd6 Re7°]

14... a4!

[14... e5? 15. Ne6! Qc8 16. Rxd6 Re7 17. Qxg7+! Rxg7 18. Rxg7+ Kh8 19. Rdx7□]

15. ba e5 16. Ne6

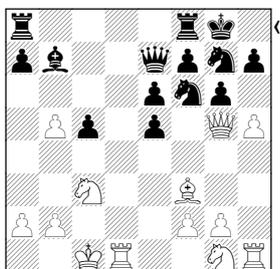
[16. Nf5 Bxf5 17. ef Rxa4μ]

16... Qc4 17. b3

[17. Rxd6 b3 18. c3 Rxa4 19. Kd2 Ra6!°]

17... Qxe6 18. Qxe6 Bxe6 19. Rxd6 Re8 20. Rb6 Rxf3 21. Rxb4 Rc8 22. Kb2 Rf2 23. Rc1 Bf7° Fisher - Larsen, (Palma de Mallorca,1970)

Bareev - Polgar J. (Hastings,1993)



Prevention of opening up of files is an important defensive method.

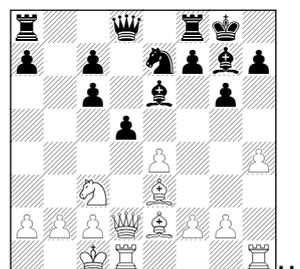
1... e4! 2. Nxe4 Bxe4 3. Bxe4 h6! 4. Qe3

[4. Qxh6? Nxe4 5. hg Qg5+°]

4... Nxe4 5. Qxe4 g5! The h-file remained close. At the same time, the dark clouds are gathering over the white castling position. 6. Ne2 a6! 7. ba Rxa6 8. a3 Qf6 9. f4 Rb8 10. Qe5 Qxe5! 11. fe Ra4-μ

(õå5,h5) 12. Nc3 Rg4 13. Rd2 Nf5 14. Re1 Ng3 15. Red1 Kg7 16. Rd8 Rxd8 17. Rxd8 Ne4 18. Nxe4 Rxe4 19. Rd3 Kf8 20. Kd2 Ke7 21. Re3 Rh4 22. Ke2 Kd7 23. Rh3 Rxh3 24. gh Kc6 25. a4 Kd5 26. a5 Kc6 27. Kd3 Kb5 28. b3 Kxa5 29. Kc4 Kb6 30. Kd3 Kc7 31. Kc3 Kb7 0:1, Bareev - Polgar J. , (Hastings,1993)

Ljublinskij - Simagin (Moscow,1939)



One should try to prevent his main defensive pieces from being exchanged. This rule is especially important for a fianchettoed bishop which covers the squares around its king and at the same time fires in the enemy king's direction.

1. Bh6 To keep his dark-squared bishop, Black sacrifices an exchange! 1... Bh8!! 2. Bxf8 Qxf8@f ('h8-a1,'b8-b1) 3. a3?

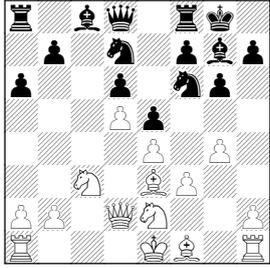
[1 3. Na4]

3... Rb8 4. Bd3 c5! 5. ed

[5. Rhe1 c4 6. Bf1 d4 7. Na4 c3°]

5... Nxd5 6. Na4 Bd7! (õb2) 7. Qa5 Bxa4 8. Qxa4 Qh6+ 9. f4 Nxf4 10. Rd2 Bxb2+ 11. Kd1 Bc3 12. Rf2 Rb1# Ljublinskij - Simagin, (Moscow,1939)

Shervin - Gligoric (Portoroz,1958)



An amazing defensive method was shown by Gligoric in one of the King's Indian lines. Suddenly Black pushed his rook's pawn which protected his king.

1... h5!! The idea of this counterblow is to block the kingside.

[1... Nc5? 2. Ng3! Ne8 3. h4(... h2-h4-h5,») f5 4. gf gf 5. Bg5 Qc7 6. b4 f4 7. Nh5 Nd7 8. Nxg7 Nxg7 9. Rc1 Nf6 10. Na4 Qf7 11. Nb6 Rb8 12. Bxf6 Qxf6 13. Rc7 Qg6 14. h5 Qg3+ 15. Qf2 Qxf2+ 16. Kxf2 1:0, Soos - Aguilar, Havana 1966]

2. h3

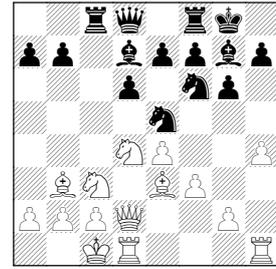
[2. g5 Nh7 3. h4 f6! 4. Bg2 fg 5. hg b5 6. Nc1 Nc5,, Avery - Gligoric, USA 1971]

2... Nh7! 3. O-O-O

[3. gh Qh4+... £h5³]

3... h4! 4. Kb1 Bf6! 5. Bf2 Bg5 6. Qe1 b5 7. Nc1 Nc5³ Black managed to prevent White's kingside attack. With his last moves he activated his dark-squared bishop and has better chances. Shervin - Gligoric, (Portoroz,1958)

Ivanchuk - Topalov (Belgrade,1995)



A similar idea breathed new life into the sharp Dragon variation of the Sicilian.

1... h5! Hoping to stop White's kingside attack 2. Bg5 Rc5! (... b7-b5f«) 3. g4

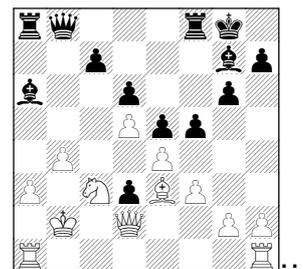
[3. Kb1!?

3... hg 4. f4

[4. h5 Nxh5 5. Nd5 Rxd5! 6. Bxd5 Qb6,, xb2]

4... Nc4 5. Qe2 Qc8 6. Bxf6 Bxf6 7. Nd5 Rxd5! 8. ed b5 9. h5 g5! 10. fg Bxg5+ 11. Kb1 f5 12. Rd3 f4 13. Bxc4 Qxc4 0:1, Ivanchuk - Topalov, (Belgrade,1995)

Petrosian A. - Beliavsky (Riga,1973)

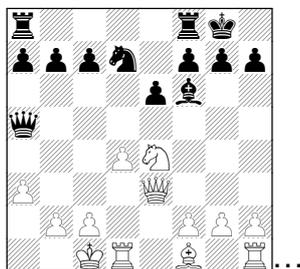


An unusual picture may be seen in some lines of the King's Indian where White castled queenside and Black castled kingside. Both players advance pawns that protect their own kings! White develops his initiative on the kingside, Black does the same in the kingside. This

exception to the rules is explained by the pawn structure which dictates to actively operate on the flank where you possess more space. Naturally, it possible only when the center is closed.

1. Kb3!! (... a3-a4,b4-b5f« xd3) Rc8 2. a4 c6 3. dc Rxc6 4. b5 d5 5. Nxd5 Bf8 6. Qxd3 Qd6 7. Kb2 Rb8 8. Rhc1□
 Petrosian A. - Beliavsky, (Riga,1973)

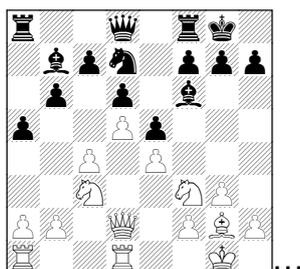
Bogoljubov - Reti (New York,1924)



When you advance your pawns, you create weaknesses in your own camp. If your attack fails, these weaknesses may be revealed.

1. h4! Be7 2. g4 b5?!
 [12... Rad8 ... c5,,"]
 3. b4!! (õñ5) Qb6 4. Nc5! Nxc5
 [4... Nf6 5. Bg2±]
 5. dc Qb7 6. Bd3 a5 7. Qe4! Qxe4 8. Bxe4-± (õñ6,b5) Rad8 9. c3 ab 10. ab f5
 11. gf e5 12. h5 Bg5+ 13. Kc2 Kf7 14. Bc6 Kf6 15. Bxb5 Kxf5 16. Bc6 Ke6 17. f3 Be7 18. Ra1! Bg5 19. Ra7 Rf7 20. Be4 h6 21. Rha1 Rd2+ 22. Kb3 Bd8 23. b5 Rfd7 24. R1a6+ Kf7 25. Bf5 Re7 26. Bg6+ Kf8 27. Ra8 Red7 28. Re6 Re7 29. Rc6 Red7 30. Rxd8+! Rxd8 31. Rxc7 1:0
 , Bogoljubov - Reti, (New York,1924)

ATTACK ON THE QUEENSIDE



ATTACK ON THE QUEENSIDE

Attack on the queenside is not so popular amongst the amateur players as the kingside assault. This fact, however, does not make it less dangerous. As a rule, the queenside attack does not involve brilliant sacrifices because its goal is not the king but some weak pawn, square or open file. Slow maneuvering intended to improve pieces' positions, accumulation of small advantages and gradual preparation of pawn breakthrough - this is a typical scenario.

1. Qc2! White's pawn structure dictates him a pawn offensive on the queenside with a2-a3, b2-b4, and c4-c5.

[1. a3?! a4=]

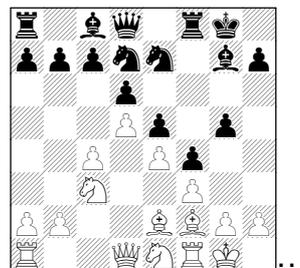
1... Qe7 2. a3 Rfb8 3. b4 Qd8 4. Nd2! Bg5 5. Nb3 ab 6. ab Rxa1 7. Rxa1 Ra8 8. Qd1 Nf6 9. h4 Bh6 10. c5! Qb8

[10... bc 11. bc dc 12. Nxc5± õñ7]

11. c6!±†õñ7 Ba6 12. Bf1 Bxf1 13. Qxf1 g6 14. Kg2 Qc8 15. Qb1 Ra6 16. Qf1 Ra8 17. f3 Ne8 18. Qb1 Ra6 19. Qf1 Ra8 20. Qb1 Ra6 21. Ra2 Qa8 22. Qa1 Rxa2+ 23. Qxa2 Qxa2+ 24. Nxa2 Kf8 25. Nc3 Ke7 26. Kf2 Ng7 27. Nb5 Ne8 28. Ke2 Kd8 29. Kd3 Kc8 30. Nc3 Kd8 31. Na1 Bc1 32. Ne2 Bh6 33. Nc2 Bg7 34.

Ne3 Bh6 35. Nc4 Nf6 36. g4! The c6-pawn is very strong, but White's win is still not easy due to the close type of position. To win the game, he needs to open a second front on the kingside. 36... Ne8 37. g5! Bg7 38. Ne3 h6 39. Ng1 Kc8 40. Kc4 Kb8 41. Ng4! h5 42. Nh6! f6 43. Nf7! fg 44. hg Ka7 45. b5 Kb8 46. Nh3 Kc8 47. Kd3 Bf8 48. Nh8 Kd8 49. Nxc6 Be7 50. Nh4 1:0, Khalifman - Gulko, (Moscow, 1990)

Piket - Ivanchuk (Wijk aan Zee,1999)



Rather often a queenside attack is met by opponent's counterplay on the kingside. This requires a great energy in implementing of your plan and a skillful combining of attack and defense.

1. Rc1

[The following classical game demonstrates the danger of Black's kingside counterplay. 1. Nd3 Nf6 2. c5 Ng6 3. Rc1 Rf7! 4. Rc2 Bf8! 5. cd cd 6. Qd2 g4 7. Rfc1 g3! 8. hg fg 9. Bxg3 Nh5 10. Bh2 Be7! 11. Nb1 Bd7 12. Qe1 Bg5 13. Nd2 Be3+ 14. Kh1 Qg5 15. Bf1 Raf8 16. Rd1 b5 17. a4 a6 18. ab ab 19. Rc7 Rg7 20. Nb3 Nh4 21. Rc2 Bh3! 22. Qe2 Nxc2 23. Bxc2

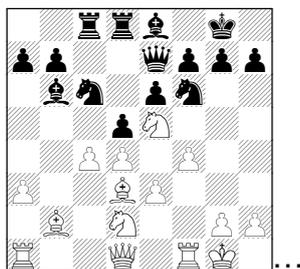
Bxg2+ 24. Qxg2 Qh4 25. Qxg7+ Kxg7°
Taimanov - Najdorf, Zurich (candidates
tournament)1953]

1... Ng6 2. c5! Opening the c-file, white
sacrifices a pawn for the initiative. 2...
Nxc5 3. b4 Na6 4. Nd3! Rf7

[4... h5 5. Nb5 Bd7 6. a4 Bh6 7. Rc3
b6 8. Be1! Rf7 9. Nf2!(õg4) Nh4 (9...
Nxb4 10. Nxc7 Rb8 (10... Rc8? 11.
Ne6!□) 11. Rc4 a5 12. Bxb4 ab 13.
Ne6!±) 10. Nxd6 cd 11. Bxa6 Qe8 12.
Qe2(... ♣b5)± Piket - Kasparov,
Linares 1997]

5. Nb5 Bd7 6. a4©f«(õaà6) Qe8 7. Nb2
Qb8 8. Qc2 Be8 9. Qd2 h5 10. Rc4 Bh6
11. Rfc1 Kg7 12. Nd3 Qd8 13. Qc3 g4
14. Nxc7 Nxc7 15. Rxc7 g3 16. Be1! gh+
17. Kh1! Bg5 18. Rxf7+ Bxf7 19. Qc7
Qb8 20. b5 Bd8 21. Qxb8 Rxb8 22. Bb4
Be7 23. Rc7 Kf8 24. Nb2! Ke8 25. Nc4
Kd8 26. Bxd6 1:0, Piket - Ivanchuk, (Wijk
aan Zee, 1999)

Alekhin - Drewitt (Portsmouth,1923)



Not always the queenside attack
develops slowly. Sometimes the
queenside activity is followed by an
unexpected blow on the opposite side of
the board. The great master of this

strategy was Alekhine.

1. Rc1 Nd7 2. Nxc6! Rxc6

[2... bc 3. c5! Ba5 4. Nb3 Bc7 5. Bc3!
Rb8 6. Na5±,«]

3. c5! Nxc5!?

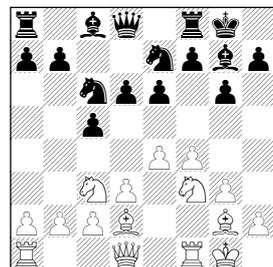
[3... Ba5 4. Nb3 Bc7 5. Bb5!□]

4. dc Bxc5 5. Rf3! Bxa3 6. Rxc6 Bxc6 7.
Bxh7+! Kxh7 8. Rh3+ Kg8 9. Bxg7! [...]
1:0,Alekhin - Drewitt, (Portsmouth,1923)

[9... Kxg7 10. Qg4+ Kf6 (10... Kf8 11.
Rh8#) 11. Qg5#;

9... f6 10. Bh6! Qh7 11. Qh5! Bf8 (11...
Be8 12. Rg3+ Kh8 13. Bg7+ Kg8 14.
Bxf6+□) 12. Qg4+ Kh8 13. Bxf8□]

Marjanovic S. - Lputian (Yerevan,1989)



A queenside attack may be effectively
supported by the fianchettoed king's
bishop. This idea is principal in many
opening systems, for instance in the
Catalan, Closed Sicilian, English opening
etc.

1... b5! 2. a3

[2. Nxb5 Rb8 3. Nc3 Rxb2f«]

2... Rb8 3. Rb1 c4!

[3... a5 4. a4! b4 5. Nb5 Ba6 6. c4]

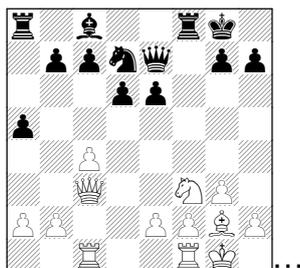
4. h3 b4! 5. ab cd 6. cd Qb6+ 7. Kh2
Nxb4³f«('h8-a1;'b1-b8;xd3,d4) 8. Be1

Ba6! 9. Bf2 Qc7 10. Ne1 Rfc8 11. Rc1 Qd7 12. Qd2 Nec6 13. Ra1 Nd4 14. Ra3 Rc7 15. Be3 Nb5 16. Rb3 Nc6 17. Nxb5 Bxb5 18. Nf3 Rcb7 19. Ra1 a5 20. Ra2 Qc7 21. e5!? de! 22. Nxe5 Nxe5 23. fe Bxe5 24. Bxb7 Bxg3+ 25. Kg1 Qxb7 26. Rxa5 Qd5@xçg1µ 27. Rc3 Qd8 28. Ba7 Rb7 29. Qg2 Qxa5 30. Qxb7 Qa1+ 31. Kg2 Qxb2+ 32. Kxg3 Qxc3 33. Qb8+

[33. Qxb5 Qc7+°]

33... Kg7 34. Be3 Bxd3° Marjanovic S. - Lputian, (Yerevan,1989)

Ehlvest - Miles (Zagreb,1987)



In the following game White sacrificed an exchange just to keep alive his powerful fianchettoed bishop.

1. Nd2!(h1-a8) Qf6 2. Qc2 Nc5 3. b3 e5 4. Ne4! Nxe4 5. Bxe4 Bh3

[5... g6 6. Bg2 Bf5 7. Qd2²]

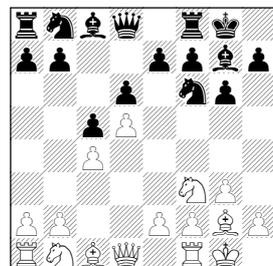
6. Bxb7!

[6. Bg2 Bxg2 7. Kxg2=]

6... Bxf1 7. Rxf1 Rab8 8. Be4 g6 9. Qd2! a4 10. b4!(...b5± xa4) c5 11. b5!(xa4) Qd8 12. Qd1 Kg7 13. Qxa4± Rf7 14. Qd1 Ra7 15. a4 Qb6 16. Bc2 Rf8 17. Qd2 Rf6 18. Qe3 Qa5 19. Rb1 Qb6 20. Kg2 Rf8 21. f3 Rf6 22. Qe4 Raf7 23. h4 h5 24. Qd5 Ra7 25. Kf2 Raf7 26. Qe4 Ra7 27.

Rg1 Kf8 28. Qe3 Rh7 29. Qg5 Ke7 30. Qd2(... a5□) 1:0, Ehlvest - Miles, (Zagreb, 1987)

Nikolic P. - Anand (Monaco,1997)

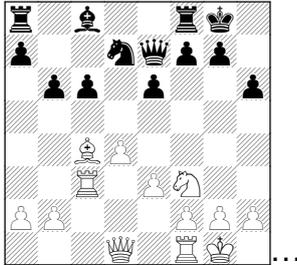


On of the typical methods of developing the queenside attack is a positional pawn sacrifice intended to open files for the major pieces pressure. Such strategy is especially effective when this pressure is supported by the fianchettoed king's bishop.

1... b5! This typical positional pawn sacrifice features the Benko gambit. 2. cb a6 3. ba Bf5 4. Nc3 Ne4!(h8-a1) 5. Nb5 Nxa6 6. a4 Nb4@f« 7. Ra3 Nf6! 8. Ne1 Qb6 9. h3 Be4!(xd5) 10. Bxe4 Nxe4 11. Nc2 Qb7 12. Nxb4 cb 13. Re3 f5 14. b3 Nc3! 15. Nxc3 bc³(žc3) 16. Ba3 f4! 17. gf Rxf4(xçg1) 18. Rd3 Rb8 19. b4 Rxb4! 20. Bxb4 Qxb4 21. Qc2 Qc5 22. Re3 Bf6 23. Qd3 Rb2 24. Re4 Rd2 25. Rc4 Qa5 26. Rc8+ Kg7 27. Qb5 Qxb5 28. ab Rxe2 29. Rc1 Rb2 30. R1xc3 Bxc3 31. Rxc3 Rxb5µ(xd5) 32. Rd3 Rb1+! 33. Kg2 Re1! 34. Rd4 Re5! 35. h4 Kf6 36. Kg3 h6 37. f3 g5 38. hg+ hg 39. Kf2 Kf7 40. Rd1 Ke8 41. Kg3 Kd7 42. Kg4 Kc7 43. Kh5 Kb6 44. Kg6 Kc5 45. Kf7 Rxd5 46. Rc1+ Kd4

47. Kxe7 Ke3 48. Ke6 Rc5 49. Rg1 Kxf3
50. Kxd6 Ra5 0:1, Nikolic P. - Anand,
(Monaco, 1997)

Polugaevsky - Andersson U. (Reggio Emilia,1991)



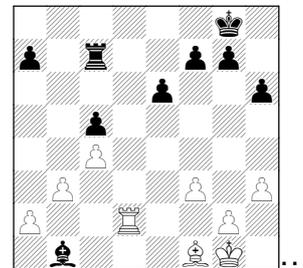
Sometimes the queenside initiative is developed by exchange of the defender's fianchettoed queen's bishop, which eventually may have led to weakening of entire group of squares.

1. Bd3! c5
[1... Bb7? 2. Be4 Rfc8 3. Qc2õñ6]
2. Bb5! cd
[2... Bb7 3. Bxd7±;
2... Nf6 3. dc Ne4 4. Rc4 Nxc5 5. b4±]
3. Nxd4 Nc5 4. Bc6! Bb7 5. Qf3 Bxc6 6.
Nxc6 Qb7 7. Ne5!
[7. b4 Rfc8=]
7... Qxf3 8. gf2õñ6 f6 9. Nc6 a5 10. Rd1
Rf7 11. Rd6 e5 12. b4! Nb7
[12... ab 13. Nxb4 Rb7 14. a3²]
13. Rd2 Rc7 14. b5! Rf8 15. Kg2 Rff7 16.
Rcd3 Nc5 17. Rd8+ Kh7 18. f4! ef 19. ef
Ne6 20. Rb8 Rfd7 21. Rxd7 Rxd7 22.
Rxb6?
[22. f5! Nf4+ 23. Kf3 Nd5 24. Nd4...
♠å6±]
22... Rd3 23. f3 Rd2+?
[23... Nxf4+ 24. Kg3 g5 25. Kg4 Rd5

26. Rb7+ Kh8 27. Kg3 Rd2 28. Kg4
Rd5=]

24. Kg3 Rxa2 25. f5 Nc5 26. Rb8 g6 27.
Nd4 gf 28. Rc8 Nd3 29. Nxf5 Rb2 30.
Rc7+ Kg8 31. Nxb6+ Kf8 32. Rf7+ Ke8
33. Rxf6 Rxb5 34. Nf5 a4 35. h4 Ra5 36.
h5 a3 37. h6 Ra7 38. Nd6+ 1:0,
Polugaevsky L. - Andersson U. , Reggio
Emilia 1991 It

Botvinnik - Rabinovich I. (Leningrad,1934)



According to Steinitz, a queenside pawn majority is one of the factors that must be considered for correct assessment of position. It takes on special significance in an endgame when the board is almost empty and the power of the passed pawns is increasing. The following endgame is a fine instructive example of utilizing the queenside pawn majority.

1. a3!(... b4ž«) Rb7
[1... a5 2. Rd8+ Kh7 3. Rb8... !b5±]
2. Rb2! Bg6 3. b4! Kf8
[3... a5 4. b5±]
4. Kf2 Ke7 5. Ke3 Kd7 6. Be2 Kc7 7. b5!
Rb8
[7... a6 8. a4 ab 9. ab±(... !à2) Ra7?
10. b6+□]
8. a4 f6

[8... Kb6 9. Rd2!±]

9. a5

[9. f4!?

9... e5 10. Rd2 Bf7

[10... Rd8? 11. b6+ ab 12. ab+ Kc8 13. b7+□]

11. f4! ef+ 12. Kxf4 Re8 13. Bf3 Be6

[13... Bxc4 14. Rc2 Bd3 15. Rxc5+ Kb8 16. Bc6 Rd8 17. Rc1!±... !ñ1-å1-å7]

14. Bc6 g5+ 15. Kf3 Rf8 16. Bd5 Rd8 17. Ke3 Bc8

[17... Bxd5 18. Rxd5 Rxd5 19. cd f5 20. a6 h5 21. d6+! Kxd6 22. b6□]

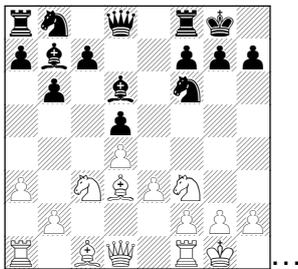
18. Ra2 Bb7 19. Rd2 Re8+ 20. Kf2 Rd8

21. g4 Bc8 22. Rd3 Rf8 23. Re3 f5 24. gf Rxf5+ 25. Kg2 Bd7 26. b6+! ab 27. a6!

Kb8 28. Re7 Ka7 29. Bb7 Bc6+ 30. Bxc6+ Kxa6 31. Be4□ Botvinnik -

Rabinovich I. , (Leningrad,1934)

Yusupov - Benjamin (Amsterdam,1994)



Another sort of queenside pawn advance is a pawn minority attack.

1. b4!(... b4-b5 xc6,c7,d5) a6 2. Qb3!(... a4) Nbd7?!

[1 2... Qe7=]

3. a4! Qe7 4. Ba3! Rfd8 5. b5! Bxa3 6. ba Bxa6 7. Bxa6 Rxa6 8. Rxa3 c6 9. Ra2! Rda8 10. Rc1 h6 11. Rac2²(xc6) Qd6 12.

Nd2 Qe6 13. h3 Qf5?

[13... c5!??]

14. Nf1! c5 15. Ng3 Qg5

[15... Qe6 16. Nge2!... ♡f4]

16. Rd2 cd

[16... c4 17. Qd1±... !b2,!cb1 xb6,d5]

17. Rxd4± Nc5 18. Qd1 Ne6 19. Rb4 Rc8?

20. Nxd5! Rxc1 21. Nxf6+ Qxf6 22. Qxc1 Nc5 23. Ne4 Qc6 24. Nxc5 bc 25.

Rb5 c4 26. Rb8+ Kh7 27. Qc2+ g6 28. Qc3 f6 29. Qb4 g5 30. Qe7+ Kg6 31.

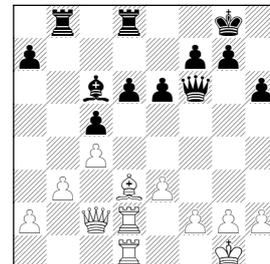
Rg8+ Kh5 32. Qf7+ Kh4 33. g3+

1:0, Yusupov - Benjamin,

(Amsterdam,1994) [...]

[33... Kxh3 34. Qh5#]

Saemisch - Alekhin (Dresden,1926)



Attack with the rook's pawn is a particular case of the pawn minority attack. Its idea is to create a vulnerable point on b3 (b6).

1... Qe5! Preventing 2. ♣å4 and protecting the d6-pawn. 2. Qb2 Qxb2 3. Rxb2 a5!(... a5-a4 xb3) 4. Rbd2 Kf8 5. Bc2 Ke7 6. f3 a4! 7. Kf2 ab 8. Bxb3

[8. ab Ra8µ]

8... f5 9. Ke2 Rb4 10. Kd3 Ba4 11. Bxa4

[11. Kc3 Rdb8! 12. Rb2 (12. Rxd6? Rxb3+!°) 12... d5! 13. cd c4 14. d6+

Kd8 15. Rd4 Bxb3! 16. ab Rxb3+ 17. Rxb3 Rxb3+ 18. Kxc4 Rxe3 19. d7 Re2 20. Kc5!]=

11... Rxa4 12. Rb1

[12. Rc1 Ra3+ 13. Ke2 Rda8 14. Rcc2 Kd7μ ... ♘c6, d5]

12... Ra3+ 13. Ke2

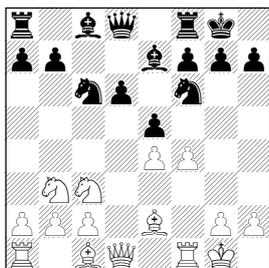
[13. Rb3 Rda8 14. Rxa3 Rxa3+μ]

13... Rc3 14. a4 Ra3! 15. Rb7+ Rd7 16. Rdb2 Rxa4 17. Rxd7+ Kxd7 18. Rb7+ Kc6 19. Rxc7 Rxc4 20. Rg6 Kd5 21. Rxh6 Rc2+ 22. Kf1 c4 23. Rh8 c3 24. h4

[24. Rc8 f4! 25. ef Kd4 26. h4 Ke3 27. Kg1 Kxf4 28. h5 Kg5 29. g4 d5° Alekhin]

24... Rd2 25. Ke1 Rxc2 26. Rc8 c2 27. h5 Rh2 28. h6 Rxh6 29. Rxc2 Rh1+ 30. Kd2 Rh2+ 31. Kd3 Rxc2 0:1, Saemisch - Alekhin, (Dresden, 1926)

Ljuboshits - Boleslavsky (Minsk,1955)



Rather open a shaky knight position on b3 (b6) gives occasion for the a-pawn march.

1... a5! A typical method in the Boleslavsky system. 2. Be3?!

[2. a4 Nb4,,]

2... a4! 3. Nd2 a3! 4. b3 Nd4!(... ♗à5) 5. Nc4

[5. Nb5 Nxb5 6. Bxb5 Ng4μ;

5. Rb1 Qc7 6. Nc4 b5 7. Bxd4 bcμ]

5... b5 6. Bxd4

[6. fe Nxe2+ 7. Nxe2 de 8. Qxd8 Bxd8 9. Nxe5 Nxe4μ]

6... ed 7. Nxb5 Nxe4 8. Bf3

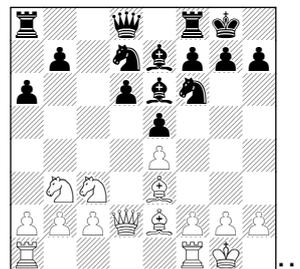
[8. Nxd4 d5 9. Ne5 Bc5 10. Nef3 Qf6 11. Kh1 Qxf4μ]

8... d5 9. Bxe4 de 10. Qxd4?

[1 10. Nxd4 Ba6!³/μ]

10... Ba6 11. Qxd8 Rfxd8 12. Nc7 Bxc4 13. bc Ra4 14. Rad1 Rxd1 15. Rxd1 Rxc4 16. Rd7 Bc5+ 17. Kf1 Rxc2 18. Rd8+ Bf8 19. Nd5 f5 0:1, Ljuboshits - Boleslavsky, (Minsk, 1955)

Karpov - Portisch L. (London,1982)



In conclusion of this chapter let us examine a Sicilian example. In this opening the queenside is considered to be Black's prerogative. However, Geller once said: "Mistaken are those who think that the kingside attack is White's main idea in the Sicilian. In the lines with ♖d4-b3, White's queen, a1-rook and minor pieces take sight at Black's queenside weakened by advance of the a- and b-pawns. Therefore, it makes sense to constrain Black's forces by

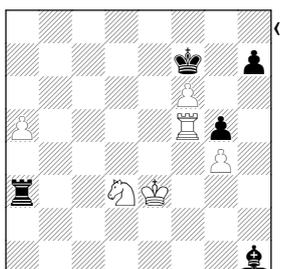
activity on the queenside..."

1. a4! Rc8 2. a5!(öb6) Qc7 3. Rfc1!(...
¸d5) Qc6 4. Bf3 Bc4 5. Ra4!

[5. Nd5 Nxd5 6. ed Qb5... f5]

5... Rfd8 6. Rb4! Qc7 7. Nd5! Nxd5 8. ed
f5 9. Be2 Bxb3 10. Rxb3 f4?! 11. Bb6
Nxb6 12. Rxb6 Bg5 13. Bg4@± Rb8 14.
Re1 Qc5 15. Re4 Rf8 16. b4! Qc7 17. c4!
Kh8 18. c5! dc 19. d6 Qd8 20. bc f3 21.
Qd5 fg 22. Rxe5 Qf6 23. Rf5 Qa1+ 24.
Kxg2 Bf6 25. d7 Qxa5 26. Rxb7 Rxb7 27.
Qxb7 Qd8 28. c6 a5 29. c7 Qxd7 30. Rf4
1:0, Karpov - Portisch L., (London, 1982)

DEFENSE AND COUNTERATTACK



DEFENSE AND COUNTERATTACK

Defense of difficult or slightly worse positions is one of the most important components of chess skill. A defending player has to be cool-headed and believe in his defensive resources. These resources in chess are very numerous. It is enough to remember a huge number of theoretically drawn positions with material inequality. The more such positions you know, the easier your defense is.

1... Bb7! 2. Kd2

[2. Kd4 Ra4+ 3. Kc3 Ra3+ 4. Kd2]

2... Bc8! 3. Ne5+ Kf8 4. Rxc5 Rxa5!!

[4... Be6 5. f7 (5. Rh5 Kg8 6. f7+ Bxf7 7. Rg5+ Bg6 8. Nxc6 hg 9. Rxc6+±)

5... Ke7 6. Rg8 Bxf7 7. Rg7 Kf6 8. Rxf7+ Kxe5 9. Rxc7±]

5. Nd7+ Bxd7 6. Rxa5 Bxc4 7. Ke3 Be6 8. Kf4 Bc4 Black managed to reach a theoretically drawn position. White cannot oust the black bishop from the a2-g8 diagonal. It would be a draw even without the black pawn on h7! 9. Ra7 h5 10. Kg5 h4 11. Kxh4 Bb3 12. Kg5 Bc4 13. Rc7 Ba2 14. Rc1 Bd5 15. Kf5 Kf7 16. Ke5 Bb3 17. Rc7+ Kf8 18. Rb7

[18. f7 Kg7! =]

18... Bc4 19. Rb4 Ba2 20. Kf5 Bd5!

[20... Kf7? 21. Rb7+ Kf8 22. Kg6□]

21. Kg6 Bf7+! 22. Kg5 Bd5 23. Rh4 Bb3 24. Rh8+ Kf7 25. Rh7+ Kf8 26. f7 Ke7!

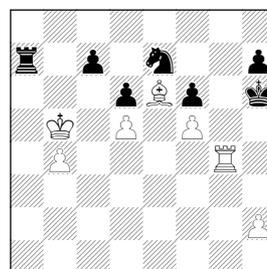
[26... Bxf7? 27. Kf6 Ba2 28. Rh8+ Bg8 29. Kg6□]

27. Kg6 Bc4!

[27... Bc2+? 28. Kg7□]

28. Rg7 Bb3 29. f8Q+ Kxf8 30. Kf6 Ke8 31. Re7+ Kd8 ½:½, Szabo - Botvinnik, (Budapest, 1952)

Korchnoi - Petrosian T. (Moscow, 1971)



While defending, tactical skill plays an important role. Sometimes study-like possibilities help to save a game.

1... Ra1!

[1... Rb7+? 2. Ka6 Rb6+ 3. Ka5 Rb7 4. Rc4 Kg5 5. h4+ Kh6 6. Ka6 Rb6+ 7. Ka7 Rb5 8. Bd7 Rxd5 9. Rxc7 Nxf5 10. b5□]

2. h4 Ra3 3. Re4 Ra7! 4. Bd7!

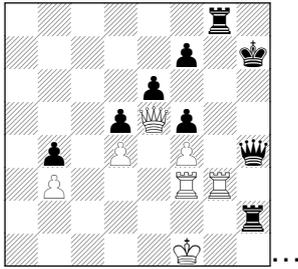
[4. Kc4 Ra1! ... 5. Bd7 Rc1+ =]

4... Nxd5 5. Kc6 Nb6! 6. Be6± d5! (... Rc4-e5) 7. Bxd5 Nxd5 8. Kxd5 Ra4!! 9. Kc6

[9. Ke6 c5 =]

9... Kh5 10. Kxc7 h6!! 11. Kd6 Rxb4!! 12. Rxb4 Stalemate! (Analysis by Petrosian)

Taimanov - Geller (Moscow,1951)



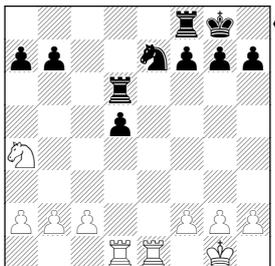
The study-like possibilities should be considered not only in an endgame, but even in a middlegame!

1. Qe3? White lets a study-like draw slip away:

[1. Rxc8 Kxc8 2. Rg3+!! Qxg3 3. Qb8+! Kg7 4. Qg8+!! Kxg8=]

1... Ra8 2. Rg7+ Kh6 0:1, Taimanov - Geller, (Moscow, 1951)

Bakulin - Dvoretzky M. (Moscow,1974)



Naturally, not only tactics is used for defense. Strategic remedies are also important, such as, for instance, simplification of position and transition to an endgame. In particular, rook endings are famous for their drawing tendencies.

1... Re6!

[1... Nc6 2. c4! d4 3. Nc5 b6 4.

Nd3!±ž«'à]

2. Nc5 Rxe1+ 3. Rxe1 Rc8! 4. Rxe7 Kf8!
5. Rxb7 Rxc5 6. c3 d4 7. Kf1

[7. Rb3? d3 8. Kf1 Re5°]

7... dc 8. bc Rxc3 9. Rxa7 Rc2 At the cost of a pawn Black transposed the game into the rook ending. Theory considers it drawn thanks to the black rook's active position. 10. g3 g6 11. Kg2 Kg7 12. Kf3 h5 13. h4 Kf6 14. Ke3 Rc3+ 15. Ke4 Rc2 16. f3 Re2+ 17. Kf4 Rb2 18. Ra6+ Kg7 19. Ra3 Kf6 20. Ra6+ Kg7 21. Ra4 Kf6 22. g4 hg 23. fg Rf2+ 24. Kg3 Rc2 25. Rf4+

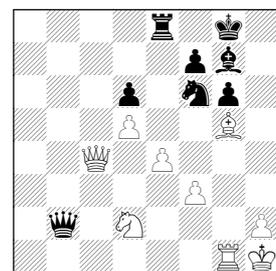
[25. g5+ Ke5=]

25... Ke6 26. a4

[26. Rf2 Rc3+ 27. Kf4 f6=]

26... f5 27. gf+ gf 28. Rf2 Rc4 29. Ra2 Rc3+ 30. Kf4 Rc4+ 31. Kg3 Rc3+ 32. Kg2 Rc4 33. h5 Rh4 ½:½, Bakulin - Dvoretzky M., (Moscow, 1974)

Portisch L. - Kasparov (Moscow,1981)



Active defense, if possible, should be preferred. Rather often, to achieve maximum piece activity, it makes sense to sacrifice material.

1... Nh5! White is a pawn up and has a solid position, so Black's only chance to

survive consists in the attempt to activate his forces. 2. Qc6

[2. Qb3 Qxb3! 3. Nxb3 f5! 4. Nd2 Rc8@]

2... Rb8! 3. Qxd6

[3. Rb1 Qxb1+ 4. Nxb1 Rxb1+ 5. Kg2 Rb2+ 6. Kf1 Be5@]

3... Be5 4. Qd7 Qd4 5. Qg4 Rb2 6. Rd1!

[6. Qxh5 Qxg1+ 7. Kxg1 gh=]

6... Qd3 7. Qc8+ Kg7 8. Qc4 Qa3 9. Qe2 Qa4

[9... Nf4? 10. Bxf4 Bxf4 11. Nc4!±/□;

9... Qa2! 10. Be3 Nf4 11. Qf1 Rc2@]

10. Rb1! Ra2 11. Be3 Qd7! 12. Qf2 Qh3!

13. f4 Bc3 14. Bd4+ Bxd4 15. Qxd4+ Kh7

16. Rg1!

[16. Qf2 Nf6 17. Qf3 Qh4,]

16... Kg8! 17. d6 Rxd2! 18. Qxd2 Qf3+

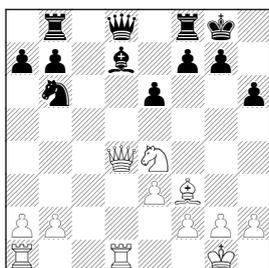
19. Qg2 Ng3+! 20. hg Qh5+ 21. Qh2

Qf3+ 22. Rg2 Qd1+ 23. Qg1 Qh5+ 24.

Rh2 Qf3+ ½:½, Portisch L. - Kasparov,

(Moscow, 1981)

Karpov - Kasparov (Moscow,1985)



Active defense involving material sacrifices is effective not only in a middlegame, but in an endgame too.

1... Ba4!

[1... Bc6 2. Qc5 Qc7 3. Nd6 Nd7 4.

Qc2±@d6]

2. Qxd8

[2. b3 Qxd4 3. Rxd4 Bc6 4. Rad1 Rfc8=]

2... Rfxd8 3. Rxd8+ Rxd8 4. Nc5 Rd2 5. b3

[5. b4 Bc6 6. Nxb7 Bxb7! 7. Bxb7 Na4!

8. Kf1 g5 9. Bc6 Nc3 10. a3 (10. a4 Rb2 11. b5 Rb4=) 10... Rb2=]

5... Bc6 6. Nxb7 Bxf3 7. gf Nd7!@(... ♖a5-f3, ♗b7) 8. Kg2!

[8. Na5 Ne5 9. f4 Ng4;

8. f4 Nf6 9. Nc5 Rc2 10. b4 Ng4 11. Ne4 f5 12. h3 Nxe3 13. fe fe=]

8... g5!

[8... Ne5 9. Nc5 Rc2 10. b4 Nc4 11.

Kg3 Na3 12. Rd1±]

9. b4!

[9. a4 Ne5 10. Nc5 Ng6! 11. Ne4 Rb2=]

9... Nb6!

[9... Ne5 10. Nc5 Ng6 11. Ne4 Rb2 12.

a3 Nh4+ 13. Kg3 Nf5+ 14. Kh3 Nh4

15. f4 f5 16. fg Nf3 17. Nc5 hg 18.

Kg3±]

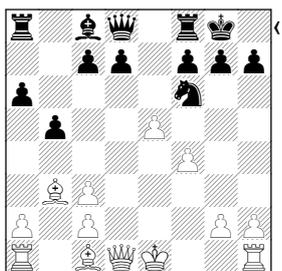
10. Kf1

[10. Kg3 Nd5 11. b5 Ne7! 12. e4 Ng6... h6-h5-h4,]

10... Nd7 11. Kg2 Nb6 12. Kf1 Nd7 1/2,

Karpov - Kasparov, Moscow (World championship match)1985

Alekhin - Reti (Vienna,1922)



In this game Black showed several defensive methods: tactical play, a pawn sacrifice for activating his pieces, and transition into a rook ending.

1... c5!

[1... Ne8 2. O-O d6 3. f5!±;

1... Ne4 2. Qd5!□]

2. Ba3!!

[2. ef Re8+ 3. Kf1 c4μ;

2. c4 d5! 3. ef Qxf6μ;

2. O-O c4 3. ef Qxf6 4. Qd5 Qb6+μ;

2. Bd5 Nxd5 3. Qxd5 Qb6! 4. Be3 Bb7

5. Bxc5 (5. Qxc5 Qg6μ) 5... Bxd5 6.

Bxb6 Bxg2 7. Rg1 Be4=]

2... Qa5! 3. O-O! Qxa3 4. ef c4 5. Qd5!

Qa5! 6. fg!

[6. Qxa8? Qb6+ 7. Kh1 Bb7]

6... Qb6+ 7. Kh1 Kxg7 8. Bxc4! Bb7!

[8... bc? 9. Qxa8 Bb7 10. Rab1 Qxb1

11. Qxf8+□]

9. Qe5+ Qf6 10. Bd3 Rfe8! 11. Qh5 h6

12. Qg4+ Kh8 13. Qxd7 Re7 14. Qd4

Qxd4 15. cd Rd8 16. f5!

[16. c3 b4! 17. cb Rxd4=]

16... f6 17. Rae1

[17. Rf4 Rg7 18. Bf1 Rc8! 19. Rf2 Rc3]

17... Rg7! 18. Be4 Rxd4 19. Bxb7 Rxb7

20. Re6 Kg7 21. Rxa6 Rc4 22. Rf3

[22. Rf2 Rbc7=]

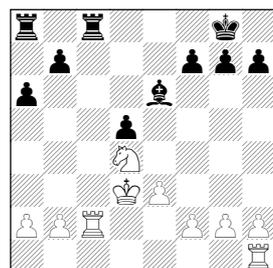
22... Rxc2 23. h3 Kf7 24. Rg3 Rf2 25.

Rg6 Rxf5 26. Rxh6 Kg7 27. Rh4 b4!(...

b3=) 28. Rg4+ Kf7 29. Rg3 Rfb5 30. Rb3
Kg6 31. Kh2 Rc5 32. Ra4 Rcb5 33. h4
R5b6 34. Kh3 Rb8 35. g3 f5 36. Ra5 Rc8
37. Rf3 Rf6 38. Kg2 Rc3 39. Ra8 Rxf3
40. Kxf3 Rc6 41. Rg8+ Kf6 42. Rf8+ Kg6
43. Rb8 Rc4 44. Rb6+ Kg7 45. h5 Rd4
46. Rc6 Re4 47. Rg6+ Kf7 48. g4 Rxg4!
49. Rxg4 fg+ 50. Kxg4 Kg7 [...] ½:½,
Alekhin - Reti, (Vienna, 1922)

[51. Kf5 Kh6 52. Ke5 Kxh5 53. Kd5
Kg5 54. Kc5 Kf5 55. Kxb4 Ke6 56. Kc5
Kd7 57. Kb6 Kc8=]

Flohr - Capablanca (Moscow,1935)



Active counterplay is not always possible. Sometimes it is necessary to conduct a long-lasting painstaking defense repelling opponent's numerous threats.

1... Rxc2 2. Kxc2 Kf8 3. Kd2 Rc8 4. Rc1
Rxc1 5. Kxc1 Ke7 6. Kd2 Kd6 7. Kc3 b6!
Pay attention to this move. Black has a light-squared bishop so he places his pawns on the dark squares. Capablanca is ready to withstand a long siege. 8. f4
Bd7 9. Nf3 f6! 10. Kd4! a5! 11. Nd2 Bc8
12. Nb1 Be6 13. Nc3 Kc6 14. a3 h6 15.
g3 h5 16. b4! ab 17. ab Kd6 18. b5! g6
19. Na4 Kc7 20. Nc3 Kd6 21. f5! gf

[21... Bxf5 22. Nxd5 Bd3 23. Nxf6 Bxb5 24. Nd5±]

22. Ne2 Bd7

[22... Bg8 23. Nf4 Bf7 24. h3!± Be8²]

23. Nf4 Be8!

[23... Bxb5 24. Nxb5±]

24. Nxd5 Bxb5 25. Nxb6! Bc6 26. Nc4+ Ke6 27. Nb2 Bb5! 28. Nd1 Be2 29. Nf2 Bf1! 30. Nd3! Bxd3! 31. Kxd3 Ke5!

[31... Kd5? 32. Kd2! h4 (32... Ke4 33. Ke2 Kd5 (33... h4 34. gh f4 35. h5! Kf5 36. ef□) 34. Kf3 Ke5 35. h3! Kd5 36. Kf4 Ke6 37. h4!□; 32... Ke5 33. Ke1! Kd5 34. Kf2! Ke4 35. Ke2!□) 33. gh f4 34. ef Ke4 35. h5!□]

32. Ke2

[32. Kd2 h4! 33. gh f4 34. h5 fe+=]

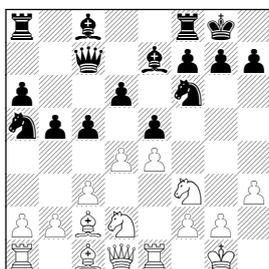
32... Ke4! 33. h3

[33. Kf2 h4 34. gh f4 35. h5 fe+=]

33... Kd5! 34. Kf3 Ke5 [...] ½:½, Flohr - Capablanca, (Moscow, 1935)

[35. h4 Kd5 36. Kf4 Ke6=]

Thomas - Rubinstein (Baden,1925)



Ask yourself, which of your defensive pieces stands badly, and try to improve its position.

The Chigorin system of the Ruy Lopez.

The Chigorin system of the Ruy Lopez. 1... Nc6! 2. d5 Nd8! This maneuver was introduced by Akiba Rubinstein. Black solves the problem of the a5-knight, creating the preconditions for counterplay. 3. Nf1 Ne8! 4. a4 Rb8 5. ab ab 6. g4 g6! 7. Ng3 Ng7! 8. Kh1 f6! 9. Rg1 Nf7! 10. Qf1 Bd7 11. Be3 Ra8 12. Qg2 Rxa1! 13. Rxa1 Qb7 14. Kh2 Ra8! The rook exchange favors Black, as he possesses less space. 15. Qf1 Ra6 16. Nd2 Qa8 17. Rxa6 Qxa6 18. Nb3 Ng5 19. Kg2 h5! Black managed to harmoniously place his forces. Now he can think of gaining the initiative. 20. h4 Nf7 21. gh gh 22. Kh2 Qc8 23. Qg2 Kf8 24. Nd2 f5! 25. ef Bxh4 26. f6 Bxf6 27. Qf3 Bh4 28. Bg6

[28. Nxb5? Bg4°]

28... Bxg3+ 29. fg Bf5! 30. Bxf7

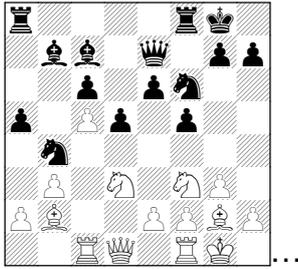
[30. Bxh5 Nxb5 31. Qxh5 Bg4 32. Bh6+ Ke8! 33. Qg6 Qf5!µ]

30... Kxf7 31. Ne4 Qd7 32. Bh6 Kg6! 33. Bxg7 Kxg7 34. b4 c4 35. Nd2

[35. Nxd6? Bg4°]

35... Qf7 36. Qe3 Qxd5 37. Qg5+ Bg6 38. Qe7+ Kg8 39. Qd8+ Kf7 40. Qd7+ Kf6 41. Qd8+ Kf5 42. Qd7+ Kf6 43. Qd8+ Kg7 44. Qe7+ Qf7 45. Qxd6 Qf2+ 46. Kh3 Kh6! 47. Nb1 Qf5+ 48. Kg2 Qxb1 49. Qf8+ Kg5 50. Qd8+ Kg4 51. Qd7+ Qf5 52. Qd1+ Kg5 0:1, Thomas - Rubinstein, (Baden, 1925)

Chiburdanidze - Agdestein (Hanninge,1988)



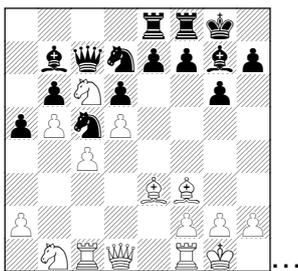
Fighting against opponent's most active pieces is another important defensive method.

1. a3 Na6!! With the idea of ♖a6-b8-d7, intending to oust the white knights from the key e5-square.

[1... Nxd3 2. ed±õâ5,â6]

2. Nfe5 Nb8! 3. f3 Nbd7! 4. Nxd7 Nxd7 5. e4 fe 6. fe Rxf1+ 7. Qxf1 Ba6! 8. Qd1 Rb8 Having covered the weak e5-square, Black is taking over the initiative. Chiburdanidze - Agdestein, (Hanninge,1988)

Portisch L. - Petrosian T. (San Antonio,1972)



An exchange sacrifice is often used in defense.

1. Bg5 e5!

[1... Nf6 2. Re1†±]

2. Be7?

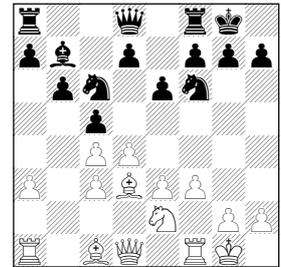
[2. de! fe 3. Nc3± õd6,e6]

2... f5! 3. Bxf8 Nxf8 Black has improved his pawn structure. It does not matter that he is an exchange down because the white rooks do not have open files for invasion. 4. Be2 Bh6 5. Rc2 Bc8© 6. Nc3 Nfd7 7. Re1 Nf6 8. Bf1 f4 9. Rce2 Rf8 10. Na4 Nxa4 11. Qxa4 Nd7

[11... Rf7!?... ♜d7-c5f»x♞c6]

12. Ne7+ Kh8 13. Nxc8 Qxc8 14. Qa3 Nc5 15. Qf3 Qf5 ½:½, Portisch L. - Petrosian T., (San Antonio, 1972)

Geller - Euwe (Zurich,1953)



Lasker taught that a defense must as far as possible be economical. For his defense one should use only the pieces that are really necessary, while all the other forces must be used for counterplay.

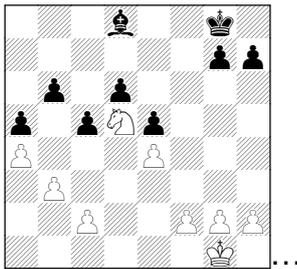
1... Na5(... ♞a6,!c8 xc4) 2. e4 Ne8! 3. Ng3

[3. f4 f5!]

3... cd 4. cd Rc8 5. f4 Nxc4 6. f5 f6! 7. Rf4(... !h4,£h5,») b5! Black coolly prepares his counterattack. It looks like he left his king without any defense! 8. Rh4 Qb6! 9. e5! (õd4) Nxe5 10. fe Nxd3 11. Qxd3 Qxe6 12. Qxh7+ Kf7 13. Bh6 Rh8!! 14. Qxh8 Rc2 15. Rc1 Rxg2+ 16.

Kf1 Qb3 17. Ke1 Qf3 0:1, Geller - Euwe,
(Zurich, 1953)

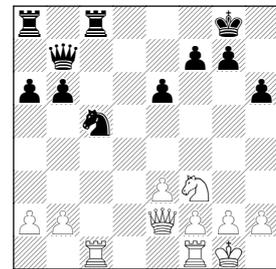
WEAK SQUARE



The main thesis of Wilhelm Steinitz's positional teaching about the necessity of a plan in a chess game has turned into an axiom nowadays. Making a sound plan of a game is based on positional judgement, where the following characteristics of the position should be taken into account . 1) Pawn structure and weak squares; 2) Open files and diagonals; 3) Centre and space; 4) Disposition of pieces. Below we will consider these main elements of chess strategy in consecutive order. A weak square is a square which cannot be controlled by our pawns and pieces, and where an opponent's piece can get established. In the Black camp weak squares are typical around the 5th and the 6th rank, and in the White camp , around the 3rd and 4th rank. If a square is weak for the opponent it means that it is strong for our pieces. The weakness of a square is determined by pawn structure disposition of pawns, but only thanks to piece activity can one take advantage is used only thanks to actions of pieces. In the current position b5 and d5 are weak squares in the Black camp.

[...]

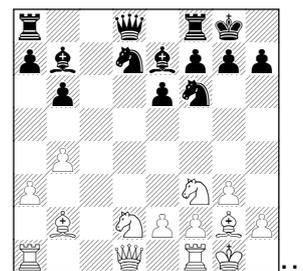
Lilienthal - Makogonov (Tbilisi, 10 ch URS, 1937)



The position seems to be symmetrical and equal. However, more active positioning of Black's pieces enables Black to find a vulnerable place in the opponent's camp.

1... Rd8! 2. Rfd1 Qe4! 3. Kf1 e5! 4. a3 Qf5 [x d3] 5. Ne1 e4 6. b4 Nd3 7. Nxd3 ed 8. Qf3 Qe5µ Lilienthal - Makogonov (Tbilisi, 10 ch URS, 1937)

Botvinnik - Donner (Amsterdam, 1963)



1. Nd4! Bxg2 2. Kxg2 Qc7 3. Qb3 Rfc8 4. Rfc1 Qb7+ 5. Qf3 Nd5

[5... Qxf3+ 6. N2xf3 Kf8 7. Nc6 Rc7 8. Rc2 Rac8 9. Rac1 □]

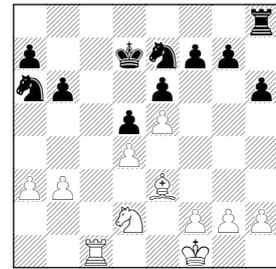
6. e4 N5f6 7. b5! a6 8. Nc6 Bf8 9. a4 ab 10. ab Rxa1 11. Rxa1 Ra8 12. Rd1! Ne8

13. Nc4 Nc5 14. e5! Rc8

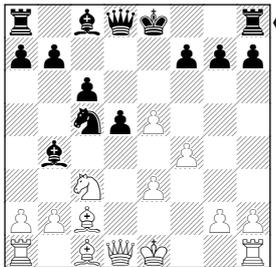
[14... Nc7 15. Rd7! Nxd7 16. Ne7+□]

15. Ra1 Rc7 16. Ra7 Qxa7 17. Nxa7□

Botvinnik - Donner (Amsterdam, 1963)



Makogonov - Botvinnik (Sverdlovsk, 1943)



The examples above show that by occupying a weak square in the opponent's territory, a piece achieves a steep rise in its activity. Sometimes it happens that several squares of a certain color (instead of one) become weak. In this case we can speak about weakness of a complex of black or white squares. With an energetic manoeuvre Mikhail Botvinnik achieves weakening of a white square complex in the opponent's camp.

1... Qh4+! 2. g3?!

[1 2. Kf1]

2... Qh3! 3. Kf2 Bxc3 4. bc Bf5! A typical method. It always pays to exchange an opponent's Bishop that is defending weak squares. 5. Bxf5 Qxf5μ Makogonov - Botvinnik (Sverdlovsk, 1943)

Strong squares may exist not only in the opponent's camp, but in your own territory as well.

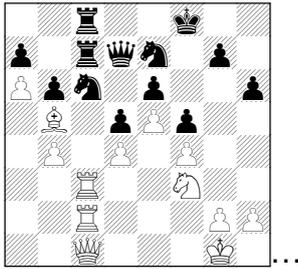
1... h5! 2. Ke2 Nf5 3. Nf3 Nb8! [x d4] 4. Kd3 Nc6 5. Ne1 f6! 6. f4 Rc8 [... 7... ♗e3 8. ♜e3 ♜d4! 9. ♞c8 ♡f5] 7. Rb1 g5! 8. g3 g4! [... h4] 9. Ng2 Rf8 10. Rb2 Nce7 11. Bd2 Ng6 12. Rc2 fe 13. de

[13. fe h4μ]

13... h4 14. Be1 hg 15. Bxg3 Rh8 16. Ne3 Nxe3 17. Kxe3 Ne7 18. Kf2 Nf5° Morlock - Ivkov (Vrniacka Banja, 1967)

Morlock - Ivkov (Vrniacka Banja, 1967)

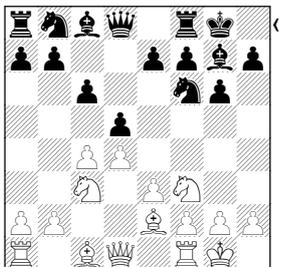
OPEN FILES AND DIAGONALS



Open files and open diagonals play an important role in chess struggle. The point is that they are important strategic roads, allowing long-range pieces to get to the opponent's camp. That's why having an open file may become an obvious positional advantage.

1. Ba4! □ Alekhin - Nimzowitsch (San Remo, 1930)

OPEN FILES



Open files

1... Nbd7? 2. cd! Nxd5 3. Nxd5 cd 4. Qb3 Nf6

[4... Nb8!? 5. Ne5!]

5. Bd2 Ne4 6. Rfd1! Nxd2

[6... Qd6 7. Bb4]

7. Rxd2 Qd6 8. Rc1 b6 9. Rdc2 Bb7 10. Qa4! a6 11. Rc7 b5 12. Qa5 Rab8

[12... Rac8 13. R1c5 Rxc7 14. Rxc7

Ba8 15. Qc3±]

13. R1c5 Rfd8 14. Ne5! Bf6

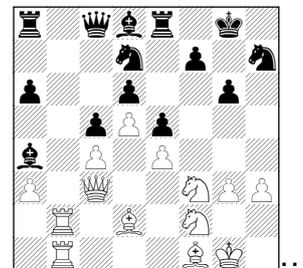
[14... Bxe5? 15. de Qxe5 16. Rxb7 □]

15. Nc6 e6 16. g3! Rdc8 17. Nxb8 Rxb8 18. Bxb5! Bd8

[18... ab 19. Qa7 □]

19. Be8! Qf8 20. Rxb7 Bxa5 21. Rxb8 Qd6 22. Rb7 Bb6 23. Rc6 Qb4 24. Bxf7+ 1:0, Rubinstein - Bogoljubov (Vienna, 1922)

Taimanov - Geller (Zurich, 1953)



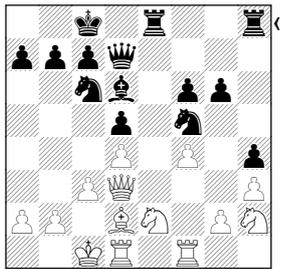
It may happen that the party which captured an open file doesn't have penetration squares, since they are covered by opponent's pieces. In this case it pays to either exchange off the opponent's defending pieces, or to distract them to another part of the board.

1. h4! Ra7 2. Bh3 Qc7 3. Ng5! Nxd5 4. Bxd5 Bxd5 5. hg Kg7 6. Qf3! [... 7. ♣d7 and 8. ♠f6] 6... Qd8 7. Rb7! Rxb7 8. Rxb7 Kg8 9. Bxd7 Bxd7 10. Ng4 Qxg5

[10... Bxg4 11. Qxf7+ □]

11. Rxd7 □ Taimanov - Geller (Zurich, 1953)

Winter - Alekhine (Nottingham, 1936)



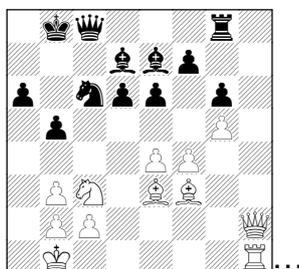
It is useful to know one of the most important principles when doubling or tripling of heavy pieces along the open file. As a rule, the strongest one (i.e. the Queen) must be in the rear. This method is also called "Alekhine's".

1... Re6! 2. Ng4 Rhe8 3. Rde1 R8e7! 4. Kd1 Qe8! 5. Qf3 Na5 6. b3 Nc4! 7. Bc1 Nce3+ 8. Bxe3 Nxe3+ 9. Nxe3 Rxe3 10. Qf2 Qb5! 11. Nc1 Rxc3 12. Rxe7 Bxe7 13. Qe1 Kd7 14. f5

[14. Qxc3 Qxf1+°]

14... Re3 15. Qf2 g5 16. Re1 Re4 17. Rxe4 de 18. Kd2 Bd6 19. Kc2 Bf4 0:1, Winter - Alekhine (Nottingham, 1936)

Belavsky - Cabrilo (Lvov, 1981)



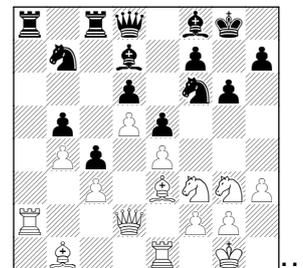
And this is how "Alekhine's" trick was played in a game of modern grandmasters.

1. Bg1!! [... 2. £f2 lh8? 3. £b6□]
[1. Qh7?! Qf8]

1... Bd8
[1... Ka8 2. Qf2 Rh8 3. e5 d5 4. Nxd5 ed 5. Bxd5□]

2. Qd2! Bc7 3. Rh7! Qe8 4. Qh2 Bc8 5. Ne2 Bb7 6. Nc1 e5 7. Nd3 ef 8. Qxf4 Rf8 9. Qf6 Ne5? 10. Nxe5 Qxe5 11. Qxe5 de 12. Bc5 Rg8 13. Rxf7 Rh8 14. Rf6 1:0, Belavsky - Cabrilo (Lvov, 1981)

Karpov - Unzicker (Nice, 1974)



A trick used in the following game has also become typical.

1. Ba7! Hindering any simplifying exchanges and preparing to double along "a"-file. 1... Ne8 2. Bc2 Nc7 3. Rea1 Qe7 4. Bb1 Be8 5. Ne2 Nd8 6. Nh2 Bg7 7. f4! f6

[7... ef 8. Nxf4 Bh6 9. Nxg6□]

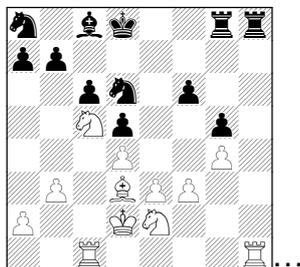
8. f5 g5 9. Bc2! [x h5] 9... Bf7 10. Ng3 Nb7 11. Bd1 h6?! 12. Bh5 Qe8 13. Qd1 Nd8 14. Ra3 Kf8 15. R1a2 Kg8 16. Ng4! Kf8 17. Ne3 Kg8 18. Bxf7+ Nxf7 19. Qh5 Nd8

[19... Nh8 20. Ng4 Qxh5 21. Nxf5 Kf7 22. Bb6 Rxa3 23. Rxa3 Ra8 24. Rxa8 Nxa8 25. Bd8□]

20. Qg6! Kf8 21. Nh5 1:0, Karpov -

Unzicker (Nice, 1974)

Kasparov - Karpov (Moscow, 1985)



It would be interesting to know that already in 1985

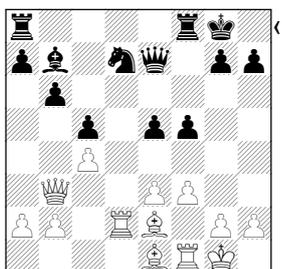
Gary Kasparov playing against Anatoly Karpov performed analogous reorganization of pieces.

1. Bh7! Rf8

[1... Rg7 2. Bf5 Rgg8 3. Ng3 [x e6]]

2. Rh6 Nc7 3. Ng3 Nf7 4. Rh2 Ne6 5. Nd3 Ng7 6. Rch1± Kasparov - Karpov (Moscow, 1985)

Vidmar - Nimzowitsch (New York, 1927)



Of course, having an open file in itself doesn't mean anything, since positional judgement involves cooperation of all the range of strategic

elements.

1... g5! 2. Bf2 Nf6 3. Rfd1 Rae8! 4. Qa4 Ba8 5. Rd6

[5. Rd7?! Nxd7 6. Rxd7 Qf6 7. Qxa7 h6μ]

5... Qg7 6. Bf1?

[6. Be1! g4 7. fg Nxf4 8. Rd7 Qg5 9. Bxf4 Qxf4 10. Qc2 Nimzowitsch]

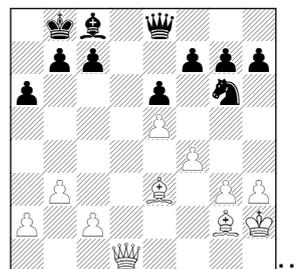
6... e4 7. Be1 ef 8. Bc3 Qe7! 9. R6d3

[9. Bxf6 Qxe3+ 10. Kh1 fg+ 11. Bxg2 Qe1+ 12. Rxe1 Rxe1#]

9... fg 10. Bxg2 Bxg2 11. Bxf6 Qe4! 12.

R1d2 Bh3 13. Bc3 Qg4+ 0:1, Vidmar - Nimzowitsch (New York, 1927)

OPEN DIAGONALS

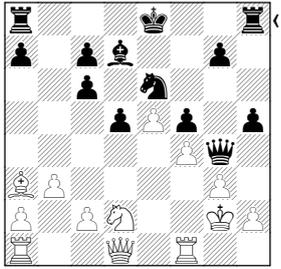


Open diagonals are of no less importance for the Bishops, than open files

for the Rooks.

1. Qd4! b6 2. Qe4□

Gunsberg - Chigorin (Habana, m6, 1890)



In this position Mikhail Chigorin managed to find an interesting plan of attack, connected with a white-squared Bishop going to the diagonal a8-h1

1... c5! 2. h3 Qg6 3. Kh2 O-O-O 4. h4 Bc6! 5. Nf3 Bb7! 6. Qd2 d4 7. Ne1 Qe8! 8. Nd3 Qc6! 9. Rf2 Rdg8 10. Raf1 Rh6 11. Qa5 Qb6 12. Qe1

[12. Qxb6!]

12... Rg6! 13. c4 Rg4! 14. Bc1 Qc6 15. Rg1 Rh8 16. Rb2 Qf3 17. Nf2

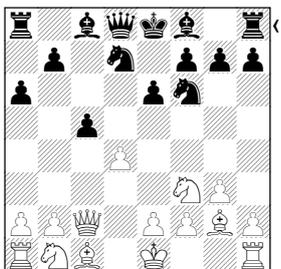
[17. Qe2 Rxc3!°]

17... g5!! 18. Nxc4

[18. fg f4°]

18... hg 19. Qf1 Rxh4+! 20. gh g3+ 21. Rxc3 Qxf1° Gunsberg - Chigorin (Habana, m6, 1890)

Smyslov - O'Kelly (Groningen, 1946)



The main idea of many modern opening

formations is the high activity of the Bishop along long diagonals. Among such openings there are for example the KINGS' INDIAN defense, where Black's black-squared Bishop is active. In the ENGLISH opening, CATALAN system, and RETI opening it is a White's white-squared Bishop which is active.

1... cd?

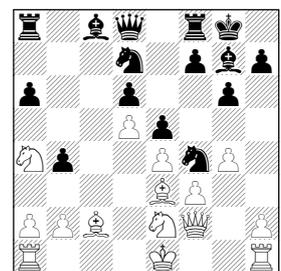
[1... b6!]

2. Nxd4 Qb6 3. Nb3 Bb4+ 4. Bd2 Nc5 5. O-O Nxb3 6. Qxb3 Bc5 7. Qxb6 Bxb6 8. Na3 Nd5 9. e4 Ne7 10. Bc3 O-O 11. Nc4 Bc7 12. Rfd1 Nc6

[12... b5 13. e5 Rb8 14. Ba5 Bxa5 15. Nxa5 b4 16. f4±]

13. e5! f6 14. f4 Rb8 15. Rac1 fe 16. Nxe5 Nxe5 17. Bxe5 Bxe5 18. fe b5 19. Rc7 b4 20. Bh3! h6 21. Rf1 Rxf1+ 22. Kxf1± Smyslov - O'Kelly (Groningen, 1946)

Kamsky - Kasparov (Manila, (ol), 1992)



A typical trick is material sacrifice in order to obtain an important diagonal.

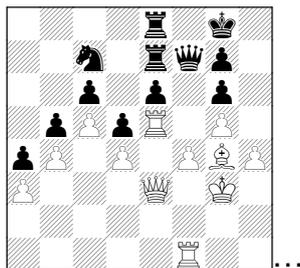
1... a5!

[1... Nxe2?! 2. Kxe2=]

2. Nxf4 ef 3. Bxf4 Ne5 4. O-O-O Nc4 5.

Be3 Nxe3 6. Qxe3 Rb8 7. Bb3 Bd7 8.
Kb1 Qe8!µ 9. Nb6 Bb5 10. Rd2 a4 11.
Bd1 Rb7 12. e5 b3 13. ab ab 14. Bxb3
Qb8 15. Nc4 Bxc4 16. Bxc4 Bxe5 17.
Qe2 Qa7 18. Rc1 Ra8 19. b3 Bf4 20. Kc2
Re7 21. Qd3 Qc5 22. Rb1 Re3 23. Qd4
Ra2+ 24. Kd1 Rxf3!° [Kamsky - Kasparov](#)
(Manila, (ol), 1992)

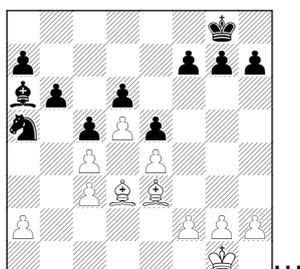
PAWN STRUCTURE



The quality of pawn structure is determined by its flexibility. While presence of backward, isolated or doubled pawns may turn out to be a serious defect of the position, other conditions being equal. All kinds of weak pawns have a common drawback - they lack pawn support and may turn into a target for the opponent's pieces. Note that not only a pawn itself may be weak; a square in front of it may be weak too, being deprived of pawn defence. In the following example the Black has weak pawns e6 and g6

1. Bd1 Rf8 2. Bc2 1:0, Palatnik - Tradardi (Rome, 1990)

WEAK PAWNS

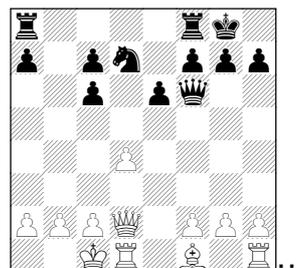


All weak pawns have a common drawback - they lack pawn support and

may turn into wonderful targets for the opponent's pieces. The white pawn c4 is hopelessly weak.

[...]

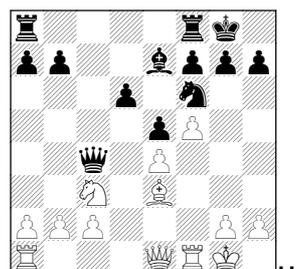
Spassky - Petrosian (Moscow, m23, 1966)



The opponents have castled on different sides, and mutual attacks on opposite wings seemed quite possible. However, chronic weaknesses in Black's pawn structure dictate an absolutely different strategy for White.

1. h4! Rab8 2. Rh3 c5 3. Qg5! cd
 [3... Qxf2? 4. Rf3 Qg1 5. Bb5] 4. Qxf6 Nxf6 5. Rxd4 Rb7 6. Rb3! Rxb3
 7. ab Ra8 8. Rc4 Ne8 9. Ra4 Nd6 10. g3! Kf8 11. Bg2 Rc8 12. Rxa7 Spassky - Petrosian (Moscow, m23, 1966)

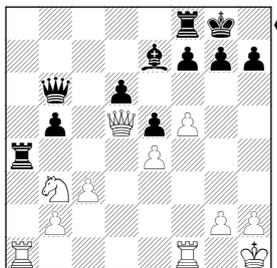
Smyslov - Rudakovsky (Moscow, 14 ch URS, 1945)



In the following example the key role was played by the weakness of the square in front of a backward pawn.

1. Bg5! Rfe8 2. Bxf6 Bxf6 3. Nd5 Bd8
 [3... Qxc2 4. Rf2 Qc5 5. Rc1 [... ♞c7□]]
 4. c3 b5 5. b3 Qc5+ 6. Kh1 Rc8 7. Rf3
 Kh8 8. f6 gf 9. Qh4 Rg8 10. Nxf6 Rg7 11.
 Rg3 Bxf6 12. Qxf6 Rcg8 13. Rd1□
 Smyslov - Rudakovsky (Moscow, 14 ch
 URS, 1945)

Unzicker - Fischer (Varna, 1962)



Of course, one shouldn't think that weak pawns always hopelessly compromise the position. In modern tournament practice there are even opening systems in which one of the parties deliberately makes pawn weaknesses, compensating it with the possibility of an active piece game, for example, the BOLES LAVSKY defense and LASKER variation in SICILIAN defense. Due to the weakness of d5, White seems to have better prospects by occupying it with the Knight. However, it is difficult to move the Knight to d5, and Black's pressure along "a"-file and on the pawn e4 is quite unpleasant.

1... Qa6! 2. h3 Rc8 3. Rfe1 h6! 4. Kh2
 Bg5 5. g3?

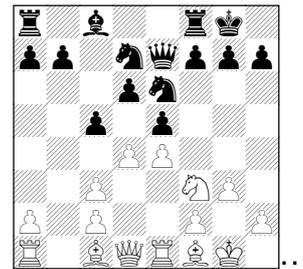
[5. Rad1³]

5... Qa7 6. Kg2 Ra2 7. Kf1

[7. Rxa2 Qxa2 8. Re2 Rxc3!°]

7... Rxc3 ! 0:1, Unzicker - Fischer (Varna,
 1962)

Botvinnik - Panov (Leningrad, 11 ch URS, 1939)



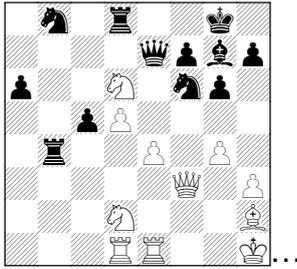
In a number of games of the late 30's, M. Botvinnik showed that even isolated doubled pawns have their advantages.

1. de! de 2. Nh4! [x d5] 2... g6 3. Ng2 Ng7
 4. Ne3 Nf6 5. Bg2 Be6 6. c4! Rad8 7.
 Qe2!

[7. Nd5?! Bxd5 8. ed Nd7 [...
 ♞g7-e8-d6]]

7... Nd7 8. Bb2 f6 9. f4 Rde8 10. Rad1 b6
 11. Rd2 ef 12. gf g5 13. fg fg 14. e5 Qf7
 15. Nd5! Nh5 16. Rf1 Nf4 17. Qe4 Qf5
 18. Qxf5 Bxf5 19. Nxf4 gf 20. Bd5+ Kg7
 21. e6+ Nf6 22. Rxf4□ Botvinnik - Panov
 (Leningrad, 11 ch URS, 1939)

PAWN MAJORITY

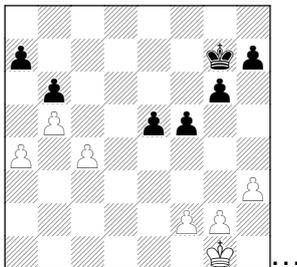


We'll consider three kinds of pawn majority:

- a) pawn majority on the Queen side;
- b) pawn majority in the center and on the King side;
- c) quality pawn majority.

1. e5 Ne8 2. N2c4 Nd7 3. e6 fe 4. de Nxd6 5. ed Qf7 6. Qxf7+ Nxf7 7. Re8+ Bf8 8. Ne5 □ Arkhipov - Yap, (Moscow, 1986)

PAWN MAJORITY ON THE QUEEN SIDE

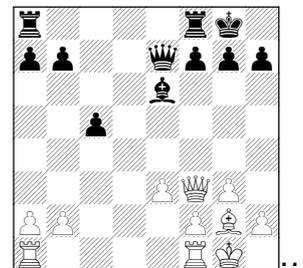


Pawn majority on the Queen side. In chess in most cases both players castle short. In such positions a pawn majority on the Queen side may become a certain positional achievement. First, it is much safer to wage a pawn attack on the Queen side than on the King side, since it doesn't weaken the position of the King. Second, the more simplified the

position and the closer to the endgame, the greater the importance of the pawn majority on the Queen side. The point being that the King of the defending party is on the King side and it is difficult for it to participate in the action on the opposite side of the board.

- 1. c5! bc
- [1... Kf7 2. a5! □]
- 2. a5 c4 3. Kf1 □

Marshall - Capablanca (New York, m23, 1909)

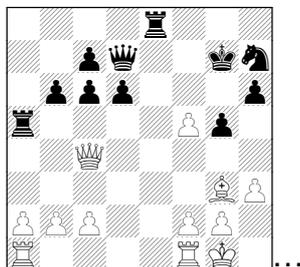


With realization of the pawn majority the strategic plan becomes to create a passed pawn and move it forward with the support of pieces.

- 1. Rfc1?
- [1. e4! [... £e3 and f2-f4];
- 1. Qxb7? Qxb7 2. Bxb7 Rab8 3. Bg2 Rxb2 μ]
- 1... Rab8 2. Qe4 [... ¥h3] 2... Qc7! 3. Rc3?
- [3. f4]
- 3... b5! 4. a3 c4! 5. Bf3 Rfd8 6. Rd1 Rxd1+ 7. Bxd1 Rd8 8. Bf3 g6 9. Qc6 Qe5 10. Qe4 Qxe4! 11. Bxe4 Rd1+! 12. Kg2 a5! 13. Rc2 b4! 14. ab ab 15. Bf3 Rb1 16. Be2 b3! 17. Rd2 Rc1 18. Bd1 c3! 19. bc b2 20. Rxb2 Rxd1° Marshall -

Capablanca (New York, m23, 1909)

Smyslov - Dueckstein (Zagreb, 1955)



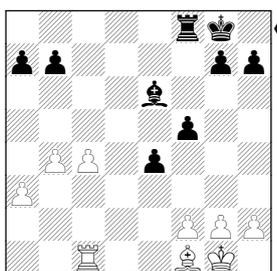
In the middlegame, when there are many pieces on the board, movement of a passed pawn becomes difficult. Though in this case the plan behind its creation is very effective since it paralyzes the opponent.

1. b4! Rxf5 2. a4! "White is going to make a passed pawn on the "a"-file in order to distract the opponent's pieces. Play on both wings is a typical strategic trick for development of the initiative. 2... Nf6 3. a5! ba 4. ba Rc5 5. Qa4 Ra8 6. a6! Qf5 7. Rfe1! Kf8

[7... Nd5 8. Qd4+ Qf6 9. Be5!□]

8. c4 Nd7 9. Qb4 Nb6 10. Bxd6+ cd 11. Qxb6□ Smyslov - Dueckstein (Zagreb, 1955)

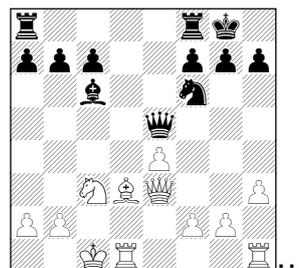
Yates - Alekhine (Hague, 1921)



Now let's consider an endgame where the pawn majority of the white on the Queen side turned out illusive, since the activity of black pieces happened to be a more forcible factor.

1... Rd8! 2. g3 Kf7! 3. c5 Kf6! 4. Bc4 Bc8! 5. a4 g5 6. b5 f4 7. Kf1 Rd2 8. Ke1 Rb2 9. gf gf 10. Be2 Ke5 11. c6 bc 12. Rxc6 Be6 13. Bd1 Rb1 14. Rc5+ Kd4 15. Rc2 e3 16. fe+ fe 17. Rc6 Bg4 18. Rd6+ Kc5° Yates - Alekhin (Hague, 1921)

PAWN MAJORITY IN THE CENTER AND ON THE KINGSIDE



Pawn majority in the center and on the King side is, as usual, more weighty in the middlegame.

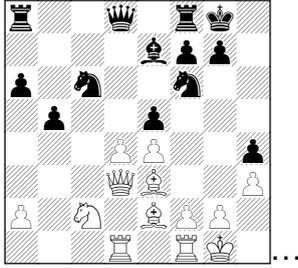
In this case positions with a mobile pawn phalanx on "e" and "f" are typical.

1. f4 Qe6

[1... Qa5 2. e5 Nd5 3. Nxd5 Bxd5 4. Bxh7+ Kxh7 5. Qd3+±]

2. e5± Alekhin - Marshall (Baden Baden, 1925)

Aronin - Flohr (Moscow, 18 ch URS, 1950)



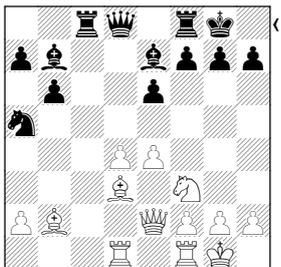
If the opponent hasn't taken timely preventive measures, then a pawn phalanx, moving forward, may completely destroy the position of their King.

1. f4!

[1. d5!? Nb4 2. Nxb4 Bxb4 3. Bg5]

1... ed 2. Nxd4 Nxd4 3. Bxd4 Qa5 4. e5! Nd7 5. f5! Bc5 6. Bxc5 Nxc5 7. Qe3 Qb6 8. Kh1! Rae8 9. f6! gf 10. Qh6 Ne4 11. Rf4 Rxe5 12. Rxh4

Keres - Geller (Moscow, 1962)



In many modern openings, for example in the SEMI-TARRASH defense, GRUNFELD defense or PETROSIAN system in the QUEEN'S INDIAN defense, there is a dispute as to which is better: a pawn majority on the Queen side or in the center and on the King side.

1... Bb4?

[1... Bf6!?]

2. d5! ed 3. ed Qe7

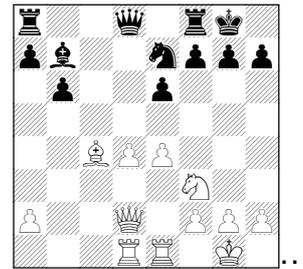
[3... Bxd5 4. Qe5 f6 5. Qh5

3... Bc3 4. Bf5 Rc4 5. Ne5±;

3... Re8 4. Ne5f]

4. Ne5 f6 5. Qh5 g6 6. Nxg6 hg 7. Bxg6! Qg7 8. Rd3 Bd6 9. f4! Qh8 10. Qg4 Bc5+ 11. Kh1 Rc7 12. Bh7+! Kf7 13. Qe6+ Kg7 14. Rg3+ Keres - Geller (Moscow, 1962)

Petrosian - Korchnoi (Ciocco, m6, 1977)



Pawn majority in the center or on the King side may eventually create a strong passed pawn in the center.

1. d5! ed 2. ed Nf5 3. Ne5!

[3. Bd3 Nd6=]

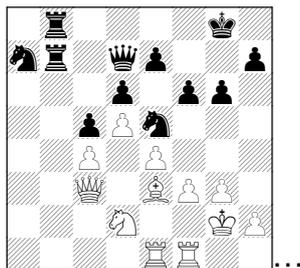
3... Nd6 4. Nc6! Bxc6

[4... Qf6!?]

5. dc Nxc4 6. Qf4! Nd6 7. Rxd6 Qc7 8. g3 h6 9. Qe5 Rac8 10. Qd5 Kh7 11. Re4 Kg8 12. Kg2 a6 13. h4 b5 14. g4 Kh7 15. Re2 Kh8 16. g5 h5 17. Rd2 Rfe8 18. Qf3 g6 19. Rf6 Qe7 20. Rd7 Qe1 21. Rxg6

Petrosian - Korchnoi (Ciocco, m6, 1977)

QUALITY PAWN MAJORITY



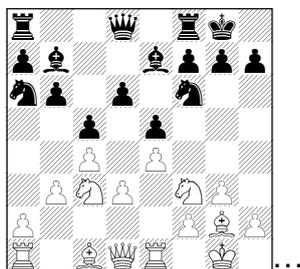
Exchange pawn superiority.

1. f4! Nf7

[1... Ng4 2. Bg1 e5 3. h3 Nh6 4. fe fe
5. Be3 Nf7 6. Rf6±]

2. e5! fe 3. fe Nxe5 4. Bh6!□ Dautov -
Timoshchenko (Yerevan, ol), 1996)

Korchnoi - Petrosian (Odessa, m1, 1974)



The position is almost symmetrical. The difference is that Black has developed his Bishop on e7, and the opponent played g2-g3 and ♗g2. It makes white pawns of the King side more mobile and allows to start preparation of f2-f4, seizing space on this part of the board.

1. Bh3! Nc7 2. Nh4 g6 3. Ng2 Ne6?

[3... Nfe8! 4. f4 ef 5. gf Bf6 6. Bd2
Bd4+ 7. Kh1 Ng7²]

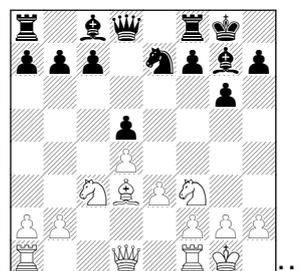
4. f4 ef 5. gf Nh5 6. Nd5 Bf6 7. Rb1 Bd4+
8. Kh1 Nc7 9. Nde3! Ng7 10. f5! Nce8 11.

Rf1 Nf6 12. Nc2! Be5 13. Bg5 Qe8 14.
Nce3 Kh8 15. Qe1 Nfh5 16. Bg4 Rg8

[16... f6! 17. Bh6 g5 18. Rf3 Rg8²]

17. f6! Ne6 18. Qh4 Nxc5 19. Qxc5 Bd4
20. Bxc5 g4 21. Qxc5 Rg6 22. Nf5 Qe5
23. Rf3 Rxf6 24. Rh3 h6 25. Qg5□ Re8??
26. Qg7# Korchnoi - Petrosian (Odessa,
m1, 1974)

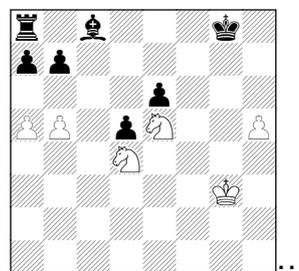
Petrosian - Krogius (Tbilisi, 1959)



A particular case of exchange pawn superiority is an attack of "a pawn minority".

1. b4! Bf5 2. Bxf5 Nxf5 3. b5!± Petrosian -
Krogius (Tbilisi, 1959)

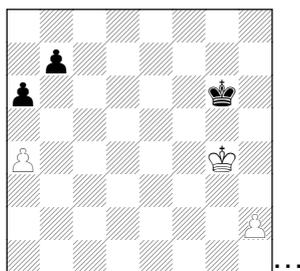
RESTRICTION OF MOBILITY



Mobility limiting is an important strategic method, based on the ideas of

prevention. An ideal case of limitation is the blockade".
[...]

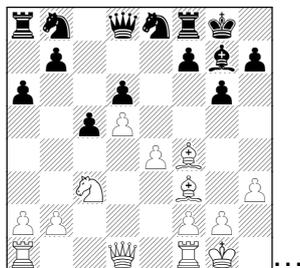
LIMITATION OF MOBILITY OF PAWN MAJORITY



Limiting the mobility of a pawn majority.

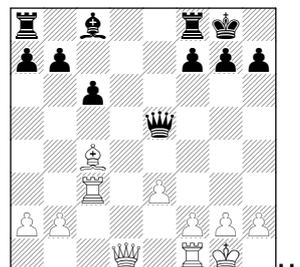
1. a5! □

Smyslov - Filip (Vienna, 1957)



1. a4! Nd7 2. Be2! Qc7 3. Rc1! Rb8
[3... c4 4. b3 cb 5. Qxb3 Nc5 6. Qa3²]
4. b3! Nef6 5. Qc2 Rfe8 6. Bh2 h6 7. Kh1
Nh7 8. f4 f5
[8... Bxc3 9. Qxc3 Rxe4 10. Bd3 Re3
11. Qd2 Rbe8 12. b4±]
9. Bf3 Bxc3 10. Qxc3 fe 11. Bg4 Nhf6 12.
Be6+ Kh7 13. h4± Smyslov - Filip
(Vienna, 1957)

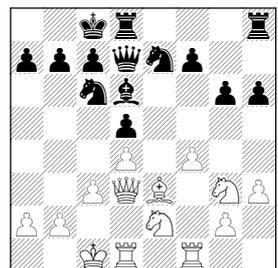
Capablanca - Em.Lasker (Moscow, 1936)



The following example demonstrates the slowing down of a mobile pawn phalanx.

1. f4 Qf6!
[1... Qe7?! 2. f5!±;
1... Qe4 2. Bb3 Bf5 3. Bc2 Qe6 4. Bxf5
Qxf5 5. Qb3 Qd7 6. Rd3!±]
2. e4 Be6 3. e5 Qe7 4. Bd3 f5! 5. Qa4! a6
6. Bc4 Rad8 7. Bxe6+ Qxe6 8. Qb3 Qxb3
9. Rxb3= Capablanca - Em.Lasker
(Moscow, 1936)

LIMITATION OF MOBILITY OF EXCHANGE PAWN SUPERIORITY



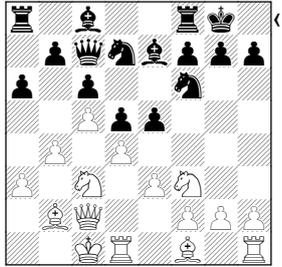
Limitation of mobility of exchange pawn superiority.

1... h5! 2. Ng1

[2. f5 h4 3. f6 Ng8 4. Nh1 Re8μ]

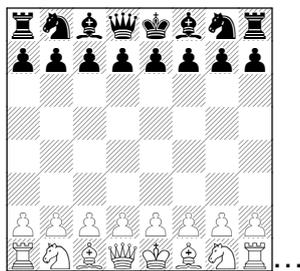
2... h4 3. N3e2 Nf5μ Winter - Alekhin
(Nottingham, 1936)

Nimzowitsch - Bernstein (Karlsbad, 1923)



1... e4 [... f7-f5-f4] 2. Nh4! Nb8 3. g3!
Ne8 4. Ng2! f5 5. h4! Bd8 6. a4 b6 7. b5
Nf6 8. Nf4! ab 9. ab Qf7 10. Be2 Bc7 11.
cb Bxf4 12. gf! Bd7 13. Kd2 cb 14. Ra1
Nc6 15. Bxb5 Na5 16. Be2 Rfb8 17. Na4
Bxa4 18. Rxa4 Rxb6 19. Bc3! Nb3+ 20.
Qxb3 Rxb3 21. Rxa8+ Ne8 22. Bd1±
Nimzowitsch - Bernstein (Karlsbad, 1923)

Portisch - Quinteros (Nice, 1974)

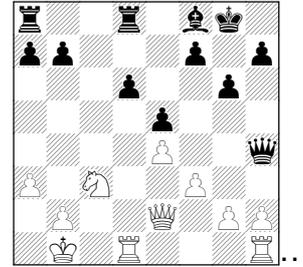


See, how Nimzowitsch's ideas
are applied in modern
practice.

1. c4 e5 2. Nc3 d6 3. Nf3 f5 4. d4 e4 5.

Ng5! h6 6. Nh3 g5 7. Ng1!! Bg7 8. h4! g4
9. e3 Nf6 10. Nge2 Nh5 11. Nd5±
Portisch - Quinteros (Nice, 1974)

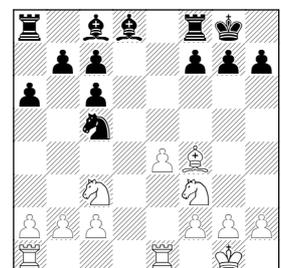
KNIGHT IS THE BEST BLOCKER



A Knight is the best blocker. A blocking
piece must meet two conditions, economy
and flexibility. Thus, it is obvious that to
use the Queen as a "blocker" is not
economical. Practice shows that one of
the best "blockers" is the Knight. The
Knight is located on the blocking position,
as a rule, in a rather flexible way,
"sheaf-firing" the neighbouring squares.

1. Nd5!

Bondarevsky - Smyslov (Moscow, 1946)



1... f5! 2. e5?

[2. Bg5! Bxg5 3. Nxc5 h6 4. b4=]

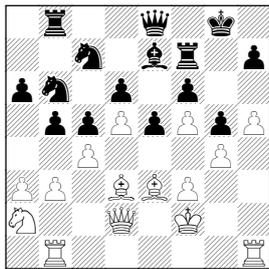
2... Ne6! 3. Bd2 g5! 4. Ne2 c5! Taking squares d4 and f4 under control, Black prevents the exchange of the blocking Knight. 5. Bc3 b5! 6. b3 Bb7 7. Ng3 g4 8. Nd2 Be7 9. Nh5 Kf7 10. Nf1 Kg6 11. Nf6 Rad8 12. Rad1 Rxd1 13. Rxd1 Rd8 14. Rxd8 Bxd8 15. Ne3 f4! 16. Nd1

[16. Nexg4? h5°;

16. Ned5? c6°]

16... Bxf6! 17. ef Be4 18. Bb2 b4! 19. f3 gf 20. Nf2 Bxc2 21. gf Bb1° Bondarevsky - Smyslov (Moscow, 1946)

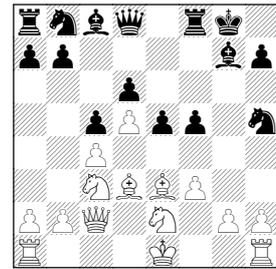
THE MATERIAL SACRIFICE FOR THE SAKE OF BLOCKADE



Material sacrifice for the sake of a blockade.

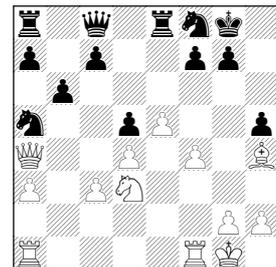
1... e4! 2. fe Nd7! 3. Be2 Bd8 4. Nc3 Ne5© Reshevsky - Horowitz (New York, 1956)

Kotov - Gligoric (Zurich, 1953)



1... e4! 2. fe f4! 3. Bf2 Nd7 4. Ng1 Qg5 5. Bf1 Ne5 6. Nf3 Qe7 7. Nxe5 Qxe5 8. O-O-O Nf6 9. h3 Bd7 10. Bd3 a6 11. Nb1! [... ♖b1-d2-f3] 11... f3!! 12. gf Nh5 13. Nd2 Nf4 14. Bf1 b5!³ Kotov - Gligoric (Zurich, 1953)

Geller - Smyslov (Moscow, 1949)



When arranging the blockade of an opponent's position, keep in mind that his pieces are ready to break through even at the expense of material sacrifices!

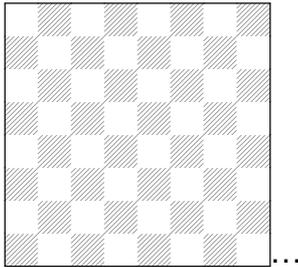
1... Ng6! 2. Bg3 Qf5! 3. Nb4 c6 4. Qc2 Ne7! [... 5... £c2 6. ♞c2 ♜f5!µ] 5. Qd1 Qg6?

[5... Nc4µ]

6. f5!! Sacrificing a pawn, White breaks through the blockade and opens files for his pieces. 6... Nxf5 7. Rf3 Nc4 8. Qc1 a5 9. Nd3 h4 10. Bf2 Qh5 11. Qf4 g6 12. Rh3 Qh6 13. Qxh6 Nxh6 14. Bxh4 Nf5

15. Bf6 Ng7 16. Rh6 White already has an advantage. Geller - Smyslov (Moscow, 1949)

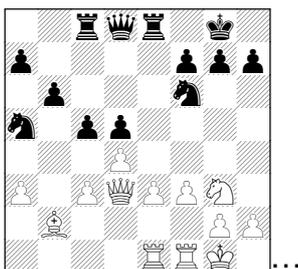
CENTRAL SQUARES



Central squares are of great importance in chess. Pieces, being located in the centre, display the most activity. They can be quickly transferred from the centre to either wing. Every chess player during the whole game must remember about the importance of possessing the centre of the board. It is possible to capture the centre in two ways: a) to create a pawn centre; b) to create a piece-and-pawn centre.

[...]

PAWN CENTER



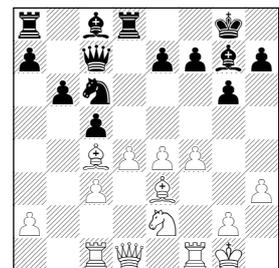
Let's consider a pawn centre. In old times the necessity in the game for creation of a pawn centre was considered an axiom. In such openings as the ITALIAN GAME, EVANS gambit, and the KINGS' gambit players willingly sacrificed

the material in order to make an ideal pawn centre with pawns on d4 and e4. Old masters always considered such a pawn centre strong. At the beginning of the 20th century hypermodernists proved that in some cases piece pressure on the center may become more effective than capturing the centre with pawns. Thus a pawn centre turned out as an object of attack. A pawn center is strong when it is supported by pieces and keeps its mobility.

1. e4! Nc4 2. Bc1 cd 3. cd de 4. fe Ne5 5. Qd2 Ng6 6. e5! Nd5 7. Nf5! Re6 8. Qf2 Qd7 9. h4! f6 10. Qg3 fe 11. de Nde7 12. Nd6 Rxc1 13. Rxc1 Nxe5 14. Qf2 h6 15. Qf8+ Kh7 16. Nf5 Nxf5 17. Qxf5+ g6 18. Qf8 Re8 19. Qf4 h5 20. Rc3 Re7 21. Re3

Furman - Lilienthal (Moscow, 1949)

Sheihel - Adorjan (Hungary, 1971)

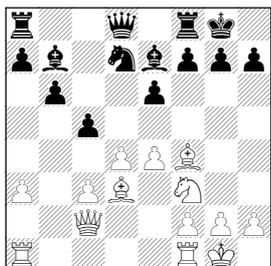


Amongst the ways of struggling against a pawn centre there are undermining and piece pressure on the pawn centre.

1... e6! 2. Qe1 Na5 3. Bd3 f5! 4. g4
 [4. Qf2 Bb7 5. e5?! c4! 6. Bc2 Nc6! 7. g4 Ne7 8. Kh2 Qc6 9. Ng3 b5µ Gligoric - Smyslov (Kiev, 1959)]
 4... Bb7! 5. Ng3 Qd7! 6. Rd1 cd 7. Bb1

Nc4 8. Bxd4 e5! 9. fe fg 10. Qe2 Qc7 11. Qxg4 Nxe5µ Sheihel - Adorjan (Hungary, 1971)

Petursson - Adorjan (Akureyri, 1988)



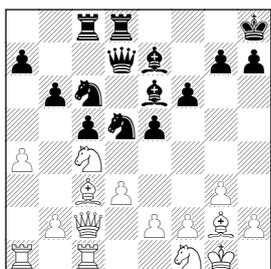
An example of piece pressure on the centre.

1... Rc8 2. Qe2 Nf6! 3. Rfe1 cd 4. cd Rc3! 5. Bd2!

[5. a4 Qa8!³ [... !d3!]]

5... Rxa3 6. Rxa3 Bxa3 7. e5 Bxf3! 8. Qxf3 Nd5 9. Qh3 g6 10. Bh6 Re8 11. Bb5 Bf8 12. Bxe8 Qxe8 13. Bxf8 Qxf8© 14. Rc1 a5 15. Qb3 Kg7 16. g3 Qa8! 17. Qa4 Nb4! 18. Qb5 Qf3 19. Qxb6 Nd3 20. Rf1 Nf4! 21. gf Qg4+= Petursson - Adorjan (Akureyri, 1988)

PIECE-AND PAWN CENTER



Piece-and-pawn centre. Many opening

formations and typical plans, originating from them, are connected with the creation of a piece-and -pawn centre. For a piece-and-pawn centre it is characteristic to have a piece outpost reinforced with pawns. We can name such openings as QUEEN'S INDIAN defence (fortified Knight on e4); PILSSBURY system in QUEEN'S gambit (Knight on e5); MAROCZY BIND in the SICILIAN defence (outpost on d5). A typical example is a plan with creating a Knight outpost on d5 (d4 for Black), especially successfully used by M. Botvinnik.

1... Nd4! In the case of an exchange on d4, Black hits on the d4 with pawn e5 and attacks whites pawn on e2 along "the e"-file. If white trys to move the Knight on d4 with the move e2-e3, it'll weaken the pawn on d3. 2. Qd1 Bg4! 3. Bxd4 ed! 4. Qd2 Bf8 5. Re1 Re8 6. h4 Bh3 7. Bf3 Re7 8. Nh2 Rce8 9. Kh1 Be6 10. b3 Nb4

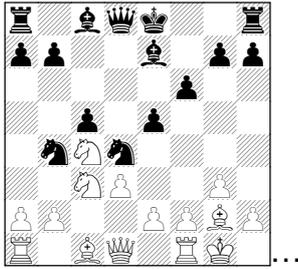
[10... Nc3? 11. e4]

11. Bg2 Bd5 12. Nf3 Rf7 13. Kh2 Bd6 14. Bh3 Qd8 15. Rab1 Rfe7 16. Ng1 Bc7 17. Na3 Bb7 18. Bg2 Bxg2 19. Kxg2 Nd5 20. Nc2 Qd6 21. Na3 Ne3+ 22. Kh1 Ng4 23. Qf4

[23. Kg2 Nxf2°]

23... Qxf4 24. gf Nxf2+ 25. Kg2 Nxd3° Lisitsyn - Botvinnik (Leningrad, 1932)

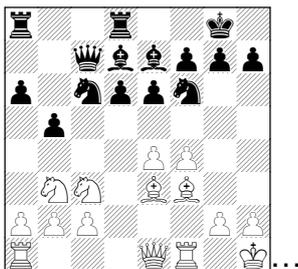
Kotov - Furman (Moscow, 1949)



As a means of counter-acting the "squeezing" scheme of Botvinnik one can use pawn underminings such as b7-b5 and f7-f5 (b2-b4 and f2-f4). White preferred not to wait for the opponent to "comfortably" deploy his forces, and performed a swift undermining to the bases of Black's piece-and-pawn centre instead.

1. f4! ef 2. gf O-O 3. a3 Nbc6 4. e3 Nf5 5. Bd5+! Kh8 6. e4 Nfd4 7. f5± Kotov - Furman (Moscow, 1949)

THE CENTER AND THE WINGS



The centre and the wings. During the game it is important to always remember about the significance of the centre and not to get carried away by groundless wing operations at the expense of centralisation. Wing operations may be a success only with a stable position in the

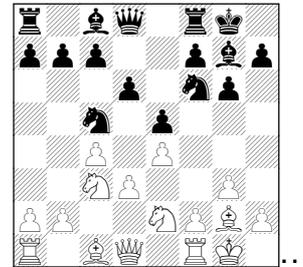
centre. Otherwise a wing attack will be refuted with a counterattack in the centre.

1. g4? b4! 2. Ne2 e5! 3. f5 d5! [x φh1] 4. g5

[4. ed e4! 5. dc ef 6. cd fe 7. Qxe2 Rxd7μ]

4... Nxe4 5. Bxe4 de 6. f6 Bf8 7. fg Bxg7 8. Qh4 Ne7 9. Ng3 Ng6 10. Qh5 Qc8! 11. Qe2 Bg4 12. Qf2 Bf3+ 13. Kg1 Nf4° Vajda - Kotov (Budapest, 1949)

Botvinnik - Sherbakov (Moscow, 1955)



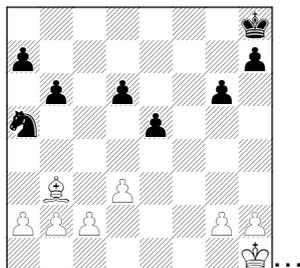
In this case a solid position in the centre enables White to perform a spectacular pawn attack at the King side.

1. f4! c6 2. h3 Ne6 3. f5! Nd4 4. g4! Ne8 5. Be3 a6 6. Qd2 b5 7. Bg5 Bf6?

[7... f6!?

8. Bxf6 Nxf6 9. Nxd4 ed 10. Ne2 Qb6 11. cb ab 12. Qh6! Bd7 13. g5! Nh5 14. Nf4 Ng7 15. f6!□ [15... ρe8 16. ρe2 ... !f1-f4-h4□] Botvinnik - Sherbakov (Moscow, 1955)

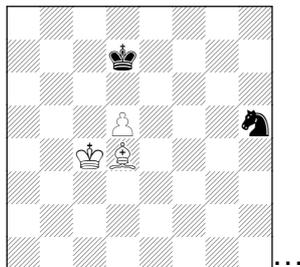
DISPOSITION OF PIECES



Positioning of pieces is one of the most important elements in positional evaluation. If a pawn structure determines the general pattern of the position, then disposition of pieces is what fills this pattern with life. It often happens that unsuccessful position of one piece only may ruin the game.

1. Bd5! □

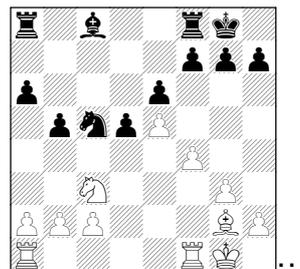
FIGHT BETWEEN MINOR PIECES



Fight between minor pieces.

1. Be5! □

"GOOD" AND "BAD" BISHOPS



"GOOD" AND "BAD" BISHOPS

As early as in XVIII century Philidor taught that one should place his pawns on the squares opposite to the color of his bishop. If the bishop is stuck behind its pawns, it is called "bad".

1. Ne2!(ōd4) White is better. Black has a problem bishop on c8 and the dark squares in his camp are weak. (Nothing strange: Lasker wrote that a player having a bad bishop, as a rule, suffers from weakness of the opposite color squares).

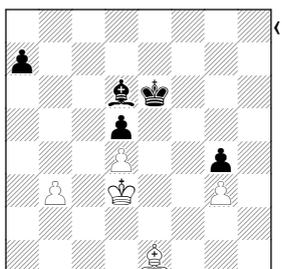
1... Bd7 2. Nd4 Rac8 3. Kf2! Rc7 4. Ke3! Re8 5. Rf2 Nb7 6. Bf1! Na5 7. b3!(xc4) h6 8. Bd3!('d3-a6; 'd3-h7) Nc6 9. Nxc6 Bxc6 10. Kd4! Bd7 11. g4!,» Bc8 12. h4! g6

[12... Bd7 13. g5 h5 14. g6!±]

13. Rh1 Kg7 14. h5 Rh8 15. Rfh2 Bd7 16. g5! hg 17. fg Rxh5 18. Rxh5 gh 19. Rxh5 Kf8 20. Rh8+ Ke7 21. g6 fg 22. Bxg6 b4 23. Rh7+ Kd8 24. Bd3 Rc3 25. a3 a5 26. Rh8+ [...] 1:0, Tarrasch - Teichmann, (San Sebastian, 1912)

[26... Kc7 27. Ra8 Kb6 28. Ra6+ □]

Van Wely - Kramnik (Ahngen,1991)



Even when material on the board is limited, the bad bishop can hardly oppose the good one. Usually the weaker sides loses due to zugzwang.

1... Kd7! 2. Ke2 Kc6 3. Kd3 Kb5 4. Kc2 a5 5. Kd3 a4! 6. ba+

[6. Kc2 Bb4 7. Bxb4 (7. Bf2 a3! 8. Be3 Kc6 9. Bf2 Kd6 10. Be3 Ke6 11. Bf2 Kf5°) 7... Kxb4 8. ba Kxa4 9. Kd3 Kb3°]

6... Kxa4 7. Bf2

[7. Kc2 Ka3 (zugzwang) 8. Bf2 Kb4 9. Kd3 Kb3]

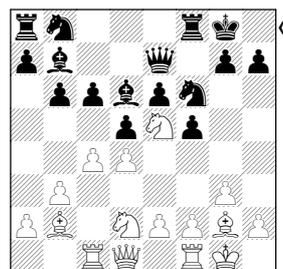
7... Kb3 8. Be1 Kb2 9. Bf2 Kc1! 10. Be3+ [10. Ke2 Kc2 11. Be1 Bc7 12. Bf2 Ba5! 13. Be3 Bc3 14. Bf2 Bd2 15. Bg1 Kc3°]

10... Kd1 11. Bf2

[11. Bf4 Bb4 12. Bd2! Be7 13. Bf4 Ke1 14. Ke3 Bb4! 15. Be5 Bd2+ 16. Kd3 Bg5°]

11... Ba3 12. Ke3 Bc1+ 13. Kd3 Bd2 14. Be3 Be1 15. Bf4 Bf2 16. Be5 Ke1 17. Kc3 Ke2 18. Kb4 Kf3 19. Kc5 Ke4 0:1, Van Wely - Kramnik, (Ahngen,1991)

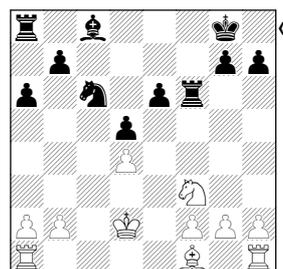
Tukmakov - Agdestein (Dortmund,1987)



Sometimes bishop's mobility is restricted by opponent's pawns. A good example is White's fianchettoed king's bishop in the Dutch Stonewall.

1... a5! 2. Nb1(... a3) Nbd7 3. cd cd 4. Nc4 b5! 5. Nxd6 Qxd6 The g2-bishop is reliably restricted by the black pawns on d5, e6 and f5. At the same time, Black's light-squared bishop, which is nominally bad, will have good prospects on the a6-f1 diagonal. 6. Nc3 Ba6 7. Qd2 Rfc8 8. f3 b4 9. Nd1 a4 10. Ne3 a3 11. Rxc8+ Rxc8 12. Bc1 μ †, 'ñ8-ñ1, õÿg2 Tukmakov - Agdestein, (Dortmund,1987)

Shtolz - Bronstein (Helsinki,1952)



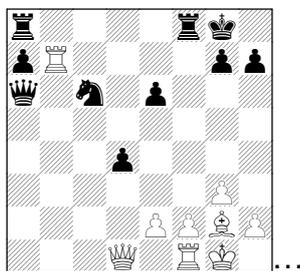
This is another example showing that a routine assessment of positions with good and bad bishops may be erroneous. Black has a bad "French bishop", but the d4-pawn weakness is a more significant

factor.

1... Bd7! 2. Bd3 Be8! 3. Ke3 Bh5! 4. Ne5 Nxe5 5. de d4+! 6. Kxd4 Rxf2 7. Be4 Rd8+ 8. Kc5 Rxb2 9. Rhb1 Rc8+ 10. Kd6 Rd2+ [...] 0:1, Shtolz - Bronstein, (Helsinki, 1952)

[11. Kxe6 Bg4+ 12. Bf5 Re8#]

BISHOP IS STRONGER THAN KNIGHT



BISHOP IS STRONGER THAN KNIGHT

As a rule, a bishop is stronger than a knight in open positions when the events unfold on both sides that allow to reveal bishop's long-ranged features.

1. Qb3 Nd8

[1... Na5? 2. Qb5! Qxb5 3. Rxb5□]

2. Rd7 Rc8 3. Qb2 e5 4. Ra1 Qf6

[4... Qb6? 5. Raxa7!! Qxb2 6. Rxc7+ Kh8 7. Rxc7+ Kg8 8. Rag7#]

5. e3 de 6. fe Nc6 7. Qd2 Nb8?!

[7... e4!?,]

8. Rdx7 Rcd8 9. Qe2 h6 10. Be4 Rd7

11. Ra8 Rdd8 12. Rf1 Qd6?!

[12... Qxf1+ 13. Qxf1 Rxf1+ 14. Kxf1~]

13. Rxf8+ Rxf8 14. Kg2 Qb4 15. Qd3 Kh8

16. Ra7 Qb2+ 17. Kh3 Qb6 18. Ra8 Rd8

19. Qc3 Nd7 20. Qc6! Rxa8 21. Qxa8+

Nb8

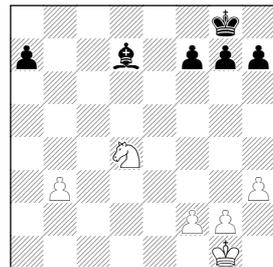
[1 21... Qb8]

22. Qd5 Qc7 23. Bf5! Nc6 24. Qc4! Qd6

[24... Qb6 25. Qe6□]

25. Qf7! Qd8 26. Qg6! 1:0, Rubinstein - Tarrasch, (Karlsbad, 1923)

Shtolz - Kashdan (Hague,1928)



In the endgame too, when position is open and the struggle evolves on both sides, the bishop is stronger.

1... Kf8 2. Kf1 Ke7 3. Ke2 Kd6 4. Kd3 Kd5 5. h4 Bc8 6. Nf3

[6. f3 Ba6+ 7. Ke3 Kc5μ]

6... Ba6+ 7. Kc3 h6 8. Nd4 g6 9. Nc2 Ke4 10. Ne3 f5 11. Kd2 f4 12. Ng4

[12. Nc2 Bf1 13. Ne1 Kf5 14. f3 g5 15. hg Kxg5° ... φh4-g3]

12... h5 13. Nf6+ Kf5 14. Nd7 Bc8 15. Nf8

[15. Nc5 Kg4°]

15... g5 16. g3

[16. hg Kxg5... φh6-g7!°]

16... gh 17. gh Kg4 18. Ng6 Bf5 19. Ne7

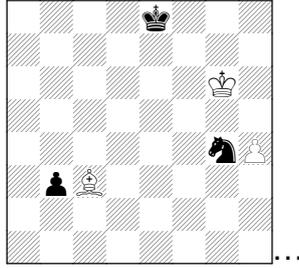
Be6 20. b4 Kxh4 21. Kd3 Kg4 22. Ke4 h4

23. Nc6 Bf5+ 24. Kd5 f3 25. b5 h3 26.

Nxa7 h2 27. b6 h1Q 28. Kc5 Be4 0:1,

Shtolz - Kashdan, (Hague, 1928)

Kolliander - Krassing (Munich,1936)



As a long-ranged piece, the bishop is stronger than knight in positions with passed pawns.

In the diagrammed position the white bishop supports the h-pawn and at the same time hampers the black b-pawn advance.

1. h5 Kf8?

[1... Ke7!! 2. Kg5 (2. Bb2 Ke6 3. Kg5 Ne5=) 2... Nf2 3. Bd4 (3. h6 Ne4+ 4. Kh5 Nxc3 5. h7 b2 6. h8Q b1Q=) 3... Kf7! 4. h6 Ne4+ 5. Kf5 Ng3+ 6. Kg5 Ne4+= Averbakh]

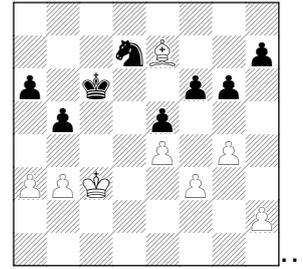
2. Kg5 Nf2 3. h6 Ne4+

[3... Kf7 4. h7 Ne4+ 5. Kf5 Nxc3 6. h8Q b2 7. Qh7+ Ke8 8. Ke6 b1Q 9. Qe7#]

4. Kg6 Nd6 5. Bg7+ Ke7 6. h7 Nf7 7. Bb2 [...] 1:0, Kolliander - Krassing, (Munich, 1936)

[7... Ke6 8. Bf6!±]

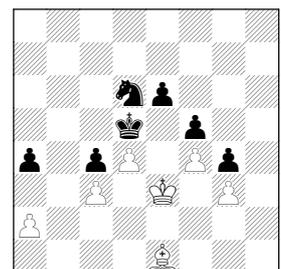
Pekarek - Prandshtetter (Czechoslovakia,1991)



Defense with a knight is especially difficult if some of the weaker side's pawns are placed on the squares of the bishop color. In this case the bishop obtains targets for an attack.

1. Kb4 Kb6 2. Bd8+ Kc6 3. a4! White clears a pathway for his king. 3... ba 4. ba g5?! 5. Be7 Kc7 6. a5 Kb7 7. Kc4 Kc6 8. h3± h6 9. Bb4± Nb8 10. Bf8 Kd7 11. Kc5! Nc6 12. Kb6 Nd4 13. Kxa6 Kc6 14. Be7! Nxf3 15. Bxf6 Ng1 16. Ka7 Nxb3 17. a6 Nf4 18. Kb8 Ne6 19. a7 1:0, Pekarek - Prandshtetter, (Czechoslovakia, 1991)

KNIGHT IS STRONGER THAN BISHOP



KNIGHT IS STRONGER THAN BISHOP
A knight is much stronger than a bishop if position is close and bishop's mobility is restricted with the pawns.

1... Nb5! 2. Bd2 Na3! 3. Bc1

[3. Be1 Nc2+ 4. Kd2 Nxe1 5. Kxe1 Ke4

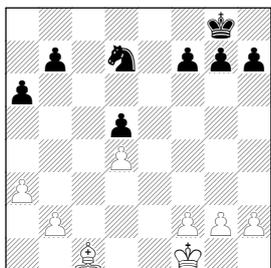
6. Ke2 a3°]

3... Nb1! 4. Bb2 a3! 5. Ba1 Kd6! 6. Ke2 Kc6! 7. Kd1

[7. Ke3 Kd5 8. Kf2 Nd2 9. Ke2 Ne4°]

7... Kd5 8. Kc2 Ke4 9. Kxb1 Kf3 10. Bb2! ab 11. a4 Kxg3 12. a5 Kh2 13. a6 g3 14. a7 g2 15. a8Q g1Q+ 16. Kxb2 Qg2+! 17. Qxg2+ Kxg2 18. Ka3 Kf3 19. Kb4 Kxf4 20. Kxc4 Ke3 21. d5 ed+ 22. Kxd5 f4 23. c4 f3 24. c5 f2 25. c6 f1Q 0:1, Henneberger - Nimzowitsch, (1931)

Saidy - Fischer (USA,1963)



The center is fixed. White's bishop is dark-squared, and the d4-pawn stands on the dark square, restricting bishop's mobility. This is enough to give Black an edge.

1... Nf8 2. Ke2 Ne6 3. Kd3 h5 4. Be3 Kh7 5. f3 Kg6 6. a4 Kf5 7. Ke2 g5 8. Kf2 Nd8 9. Bd2 Kg6 10. Ke3

[10. g4!?

10... Ne6! 11. Kd3 Kf5 12. Be3 f6 13. Ke2 Kg6 14. Kd3 f5! 15. Ke2 f4! 16. Bf2 Ng7

[16... g4!?

17. h3 Nf5 18. Kd3 g4 19. hg hg 20. fg Nh6 21. Be1?!

[21. Ke2 Nxc4 22. Bg1!³]

21... Nxc4µ White has two weaknesses in

his camp, the pawns on g2 and d4. 22. Bd2

[22. Ke2 Kf5 23. Kf3 Nh2+ 24. Ke2 Ke4°]

22... Kf5 23. Be1 Nf6 24. Bh4 Nh5 25. Be1 Kg4 26. Ke2 Ng3+! 27. Kd3

[27. Kf2 Nf5 28. Bc3 Ne3!°;

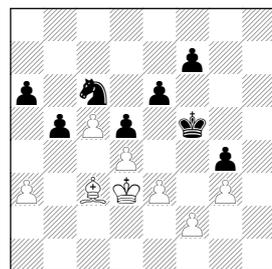
27. Bxc3 Kxc3 28. Kf1 f3°]

27... Nf5 28. Bf2 Nh4 29. a5

[29. Bxc4 Kxc4 30. Ke2 Kg3 31. Kf1 f3°]

29... Nxc4 30. Kc3 Kf3 31. Bg1 Ke2 32. Bh2 f3 33. Bg3 Ne3 0:1, Saidy - Fischer, (USA, 1963)

Kolarov - Karner (Bulgaria,1970)



A knight is stronger than a bishop when it occupies a strong blocking position. The knight is the best piece for carrying out the blockade because it combines defensive and attacking functions.

1... f6 2. Be1 e5 3. Bd2 Ke6 4. Be1 Kd7 5. Bc3 Kc7 6. Kc2 Kb7 7. Kb3 a5 8. Ba1 a4+ 9. Kc2

[9. Kc3 Ka6... c5,b4]

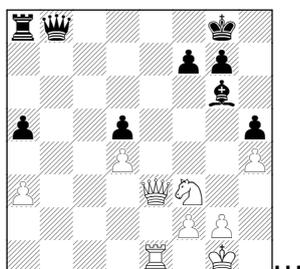
9... b4! 10. ab Nxb4+ 11. Kc3 Nc6 12. Bb2 Ka6 13. Bc1 Kb5 14. Bb2 Nb4 15. Ba3 Na6 16. Bb2 Nc7 17. Ba3 Na6 18. Bb2 Nc7 19. Ba3 Ne6 20. Kd3 Ng5 21.

Bb2 ed 22. ed Ne4 23. Ke3 Kb4 24. c6 a3
25. c7 Nd6 26. Ba1 Kb5 27. Kd3

[27. Kf4 Kc6 28. Kxg4 Kxc7 29. Kf4
Kc6 30. Ke3 Kb5 31. g4 Kc4 32. f4
Ne4°]

27... Kc6 28. Kc3 Kxc7 29. Kb4 Ne4 30.
Kxa3 Nxf2 31. Bb2 Kd6 32. Bc1 Ke6 33.
Be3 Nd1 34. Bg1 Nc3 35. Kb3 Ne2 36.
Bf2 Kf5 37. Kb4 Ke4 38. Kc5 f5(... f4°)
0:1, Kolarov - Karner, (Bulgaria, 1970)

Kasparov - Karpov (Leningrad,1986)



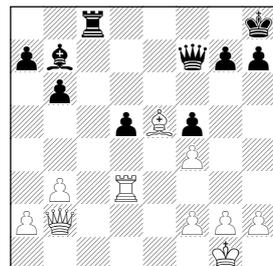
A tandem ♗+♘ is often stronger than an
opponent's pair ♗+♙ and is able to create
dangerous threats to the hostile king.

1. Ne5² (õå5) Qd8
[1... Qd6 2. Rc1... !ñ6]
2. Qf3 Ra6
[2... Rc8!°]
3. Rc1 Kh7
[3... Qxh4 4. Qxd5²žd5]
4. Qh3! Rb6
[4... Re6 5. Rc5±]
5. Rc8 Qd6 6. Qg3! a4 7. Ra8! Qe6
[7... Ra6 8. Nxf7! Bxf7 9. Qd3+□;
7... Rb3 8. Rh8+! Kxh8 9. Nxf7+□]
8. Rxa4 Qf5 9. Ra7 Rb1+ 10. Kh2 Rc1
11. Rb7 Rc2 12. f3 Rd2 13. Nd7!!
[13. Rb4 f6 14. Nxc6 Qxc6 15. Qxc6+

Kxg6²]

13... Rxd4 14. Nf8+ Kh6 15. Rb4!! Rc4
[15... Rxb4 16. ab d4 17. b5 d3 18. b6
d2 19. b7 d1Q 20. b8Q Qc1 21. Nxc6
Qxc6 22. Qh8+ Qh7 23. Qgxc7#;
15... Rd1 16. Rb8 Bh7 17. Qg5+□]
16. Rxc4 dc 17. Qd6! c3 18. Qd4 [...] 1:0,
Kasparov - Karpov, (Leningrad, 1986)
[18... Bh7 19. Qxc3 g5 20. Qe3 f6 21.
hg+ fg 22. Nxc7 Kxc7 23. Qe4□]

BISHOPS OF OPPOSITE COLOR IN MIDDLEGAME



BISHOPS OF OPPOSITE COLOR IN MIDDLEGAME

In an endgame, presence of the opposite
color bishops increases drawing chances
and favors a weaker side. On the
contrary, in a middlegame the opposite
color bishops intensify attack and
therefore their presence benefits an
attacking player.

1... Rc6 2. h3
[2. Rg3 Rg6]
2... h6 3. Re3!(... ♚d4, ♜e2, ♞e7, ♠a1-h8)
Rg6? 4. Bd4!±(õ¥b7) Kh7 5. Qc2
[5. Qe2 Qc7!... 6. Re5 Qc1+]
5... Qd7

[5... Rc6 6. Qe2 Qc7 7. Re5 Rc2 8. Qh5□;

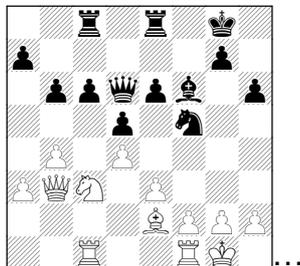
5... Re6 6. Rxe6 Qxe6 7. Qc7□]

6. Kh2!(... £e2) Bc8 7. Rc3!

[7. Qe2 Re6]

7... Ba6 8. Rc7 Qe6 9. g4! Bf1 10. Qxf5 Qxf5 11. gf Rg2+ 12. Kh1(... f6□;... !c1□) 1:0, Petrosian T. - Polugaevsky, (Moscow, 1970)

Simagin - Saigin (Vilnius,1958)



The most effective strategy in middlegame positions with the bishops of opposite color is an attack on the opponent's king. Actually, an attacking player has an extra piece, because his bishop's counterpart does not take part in defense.

1. Bd3! White intends to construct a queen + bishop battery along the b1-h7 diagonal 1... Ne7 2. Bb1! c5 3. dc bc 4. bc Rxc5 5. Ne2 Rxc1 6. Rxc1 Rb8?

[6... e5!?... 7. Qd3 e4]

7. Qd3 Bb2 8. Rd1 Qxa3 9. Qh7+ Kf7 10. Nf4 Bf6 11. g4!

[11. Bg6+? Nxg6 12. Qxg6+ Ke7]

11... Rb4 12. g5! Bxg5

[12... hg 13. Qh5+□;

12... Rxf4 13. ef Qf3 14. Rd3 Qg4+ 15.

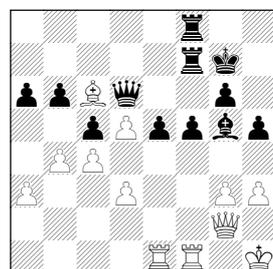
Rg3!□]

13. Bg6+ Kf6

[13... Nxg6 14. Qxg6+ Ke7 15. Qxe6+□]

14. Nh5+ Ke5 15. Qxg7+ Kd6 16. Qf8 Qa4 17. Rc1 Qb5 18. Be8! Qd3 19. Rc6+ Ke5 20. Qg7+ 1:0, Simagin - Saigin, (Vilnius, 1958)

Spassky - Simagin (Moscow,1961)



Bishops' positioning is a very important factor.

In this example the black bishop joins the attack along the h2-b8 diagonal after ♠d8-c7 while the white bishop on c6 is cut off from the battle by the d5-pawn.

1... Bd8!µ(õ¥ñ6) 2. bc bc 3. Rb1?!

[1 3. Ba4]

3... Bc7!(b8-h2) 4. Ba4 e4! 5. de fe 6. Rxf7+ Rxf7 7. Bd1

[7. Qxe4 Qxg3 8. Qg2 Qe3 9. Rg1 Kh8 10. Rf1 Rxf1+ 11. Qxf1 Kg7 12. Bd7 Qd2 13. Qg1 Qe2°]

7... e3 8. Bf3 h4 9. Rf1

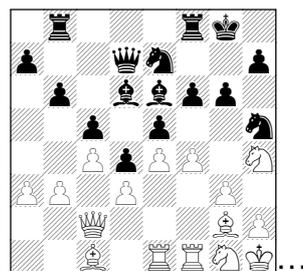
[9. gh Rxf3°]

9... hg 10. Qe2 Qe5 11. Kg2 Ba5 12. Rb1 Kh6 13. Rb3 Bd2 14. Rb6 Rxf3! 15. Re6

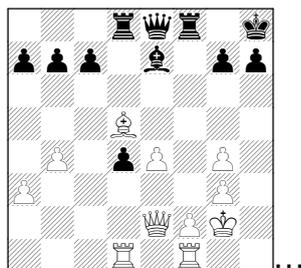
[15. Kxf3 Qh5+°;

15. Qxf3 e2 16. Qf8+ Qg7°]

15... Qxe6 16. de Rf2+ 17. Kxg3 Rxe2
 18. e7 Rg2+! 19. Kxg2 e2 20. e8Q e1Q
 21. Qf8+ Kh5 22. Qxc5+ Bg5 0:1,
 Spassky - Simagin, (Moscow, 1961)



Botvinnik - Tal (Moscow,1961)



Another important factor is flexibility of a pawn structure. Pawn storm is very dangerous if it is supported by an active bishop.

1. Bc4! White transfers his bishop to d3 intending to attack along the h-file after f2-f4, e4-e5, g4-g5 followed by !h1.

[1. Bxb7?! d3!? 2. Rxd3 Qb5 3. Bd5 c6 4. a4 Qxa4,,]

1... c5 2. b5! (x≠e7) 2... Bf6 3. f4 d3 4. Rxd3 Rxd3 5. Bxd3 Bd4 6. e5! g6 7. Rh1 Kg7 8. Qe4 b6 9. Bc4 [...] 1:0, Botvinnik - Tal, (Moscow, 1961)

[9... Qd7 10. Qc6 Qxc6+ 11. bc Rc8 12. e6□;

9... Qe7 10. g5(... £c6-f6) Rc8 11. f5 gf 12. Rxh7+! Kxh7 13. Qh4+ Kg7 14. Qh6#]

Levenfish - Kan (Moscow,1927)

In positions with the bishops of opposite color, initiative is a very serious advantage. So rather often it makes good sense to sacrifice material for the initiative.

1. f5! gf

[1... Bf7 2. fg hg 3. Bh6 Ng7 4. Bh3±]

2. Bh6 Ng7 3. ef Nexf5 4. Nxf5 Bxf5 5. Nf3(... ¢h4 xf5) Be6 6. Rf2 Rf7 7. Nh4 b5?

[7... f5! 8. Nf3 e4! 9. de fe 10. Qxe4 Bf5 11. Qh4 Bg6,,]

8. Ref1 Be7 9. Bxg7 Kxg7 10. Nf5+ Kh8 11. Be4 Bxf5 12. Rxf5± White has a large advantage. The difference in bishops is particularly noticeable: while the white bishop shoots down an important diagonal, his black counterpart is stuck behind its own pawns. 12... Rg7 13. Qd2 bc 14. bc Rb6 15. Qh6 Bd8 16. a4 a5 17. Bd5 Qe7 18. Qh5 Rg6 19. R5f2 Qd7 20. Be4 Rg5 21. Qh6 Qg7 22. Qh3 Qc7 23. Rf5! Rxf5 24. Rxf5 Rd6 25. g4 Rd7 26. g5! fg

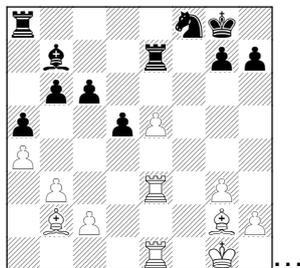
[26... Rf7 27. g6 Rg7 28. Rh5 Qd7 29. Qxd7! Rxd7 30. Bf5! Rg7 31. Rxh7+ Rxh7 32. gh Kg7 33. Kg2... ¢f3-e4-d5 □]

27. Rxe5?

[27. Rf8+! Kg7 28. Re8 h6 (28... Kf7 29. Qe6+ Kg7 30. Rg8#) 29. Qf5□]

27... Qxe5 28. Qxd7 Qe7 ½:½, Levenfish - Kan, (Moscow, 1927)

A BISHOP PAIR IN THE MIDDLEGAME

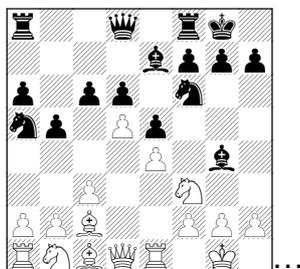


BISHOP PAIR

A pair of bishops fighting against two knights or a bishop and a knight is a powerful weapon in open positions.

1. c4! If you have a bishop pair, you should strive to open up the game. 1... dc 2. bc(h1-a8) Rd8 3. Rb3! Nd7 4. Ba3! Rxe5 5. Rd1! Kf7 6. Rbd3 Ke8 7. Bc1! h6 8. Bf3! Ke7 9. Bf4 Rf5 10. Bg4 A pair of bishops literally lacerated Black's position! 10... Rxf4 11. Rxd7+ 1:0, Flohr - Rassel, (Vageningen, 1958)

FOR



In this example White has got a pair of

bishops at the cost of a pawn sacrifice.

1. h3! Bxf3 2. Qxf3 cd 3. ed Nc4(... ♡b6 xd5) 4. Nd2 Nb6 5. Nf1!

[5. Bb3 Nfd7... ♡c5]

5... Nbx d5 6. Ng3Ⓞ For the sacrificed pawn White has the strong pressure along the b1-h7 and h1-a8 diagonals. Besides, the black queenside pawns are rather vulnerable. 6... Nc7

[6... g6 7. Bh6 Re8 8. Rad1 Nc7 9. Nf5! Ne6 10. Rxe5! gf 11. Rxe6 fe 12. Qg3+ Ng4 13. hg Bh4 14. Qf4 fg 15. Qxg4+ 1:0, Hracek - Kosashvili, Groningen 1989]

7. a4! ba 8. Bxa4 Rb8 9. b4 Nfe8 10. Be3 Nb5 11. Bc2 Rc8 12. Rxa6 Rxc3 13. Ra8 Qc7 14. Qd5 Nf6?

[14... Nd4! 15. Bxd4 Nf6! 16. Rxf8+ Bxf8 17. Bxh7+ Kxh7 18. Qa8 Qc8 19. Qxc8 Rxc8=]

15. Rxf8+ Bxf8

[15... Kxf8 16. Qxb5 Rxc2 17. Ra1f]

16. Bxh7+ Kxh7 17. Qxb5f «žb4, 'a1-a8 Kg8 18. Ra1! d5 19. Ra7 Qc4 20. Qb8 d4?

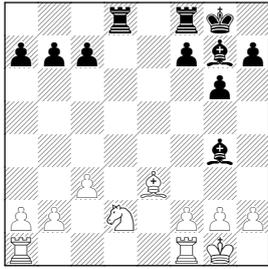
[20... Qxb4 21. Qxe5 Rc8±]

21. Bg5 Nh7 22. Be7 d3

[22... Qc8 23. Qxe5 Rc1+ 24. Kh2 d3 25. Bxf8 Qxf8 26. Qe3 Rc8 27. Qxd3 Qxb4 28. Rxf7□]

23. Bxf8 Nxf8 24. Ra8 d2 25. Qxf8+ Kh7 26. Qh8+ Kg6 27. Qh5+ Kf6 28. Qf5+ 1:0, Romanishin - Geller, (Yerevan, 1975)

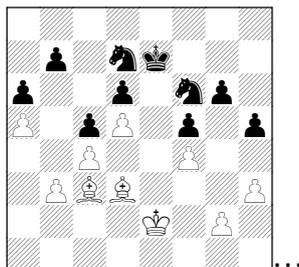
English - Steinitz (London, 1883)



Method of utilizing a pair of bishops in an endgame (in open positions) was elaborated by Steinitz. The stronger side advances his pawns along entire front, restricting the mobility of opponent's minor pieces.

1... Rfe8 2. Nb3 b6! 3. h3 Be6 4. Rfd1 c5!(õ▫b3) 5. Bg5 f6 6. Bf4 Kf7 7. f3 g5! 8. Rxd8 Rxd8 9. Be3 h6! 10. Re1 f5!(... f4) 11. f4 Bf6 12. g3 a5! 13. Nc1 a4! 14. a3 Bc4! 15. Kf2 gf 16. Bxf4 Bg5! As a rule, the owner of a bishop pair should keep them from being exchanged. Here is an exception to this rule. Exchange of both bishops leads to a won for Black pawn ending. 17. Bxg5 hg 18. Ke3 Kf6 19. h4 gh 20. gh Re8+ 21. Kf2 Rxe1 22. Kxe1 Ke5 23. Ne2 Bxe2 24. Kxe2 Kf4 25. c4 Kg4 26. Ke3 f4+ 27. Ke4 f3 28. Ke3 Kg3 0:1, English - Steinitz, (London, 1883)

Uhlmann - Gligoric (Hastings,1971)



It is considerably more difficult to utilize a bishop pair when position is closed and bishops' mobility is limited by pawn chains. In such situations the owner of bishops should gradually prepare a pawn breakthrough.

1. Be1 Kf7 2. Ke3 Ke7 3. Bc2 Kf7 4. b4! cb

[4... Ke7 5. b5! Kf7 6. ba ba 7. Ba4 Ke7 8. Bc6... ♣b7 xa6]

5. Bxb4 Nc5 6. Kd4 Nfd7 7. Bd1 Ke7 8. g4! hg 9. hg Kf6 10. Ke3 b6

[10... Nf8 11. Bc3+ Kf7 12. gf gf 13. Bh5+±]

11. gf gf

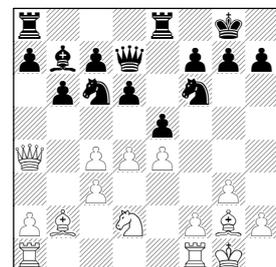
[11... ba 12. Bc3+ Kxf5 13. Bc2+□]

12. Bxc5! Nxc5

[12... bc 13. Ba4 Nb8 14. Kf3... ♠g3-h4□]

13. ab a5 14. Bc2 Ke7 15. Kd2 Kd8 16. Bxf5 Na4 17. b7 Kc7 18. Bc8 Nc5 19. f5 Ne4+ 20. Kc2 Kb8 21. Kb3 Nd2+ 22. Ka4 Nxc4 23. f6 Ne5 24. Kxa5 1:0, Uhlmann - Gligoric, (Hastings, 1971)

AGAINST



When the board is blocked by the pawn chains and the bishops are restricted, rather open a pair of bishops turns out to

be weaker than a bishop and a knight or two knights.

1... Na5 2. Qc2 c5! 3. f4 Rac8 4. fe de 5. d5 Qe7 6. Qd3 Ba6 7. Rae1 Rcd8 8. Re3 Rf8 9. Rfe1 Ne8! 10. Bf1 Nd6! 11. Qc2 Qd7 12. Bc1 f6 13. Rf3 Rf7 14. Rf2 Rdf8 15. Qd1 Bc8!

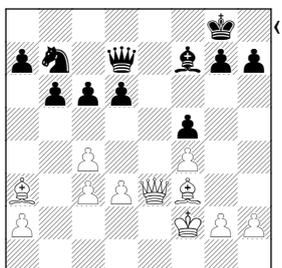
[15... Naxc4?! ð¥f1]

16. Bd3 Qg4 17. Be2 Qd7 18. Bd3 Qe8 19. Be2 Bd7 20. Bd3 Qc8 21. Bf1 Bg4 22. Qc2 Bh3 23. Bd3 Qd7 24. Qd1 Bg4 25. Qc2 h5 26. Nf1 Naxc4 27. Bxc4 Nxc4 28. Qb3 Nd6 29. c4 f5 30. Nd2 Nxe4 [...]

0:1, Gilji - Nimzowitsch, (1931)

[31. Nxe4 fe 32. Rxf7 Qxf7 33. Qe3 Bh3°]

Suba - Smyslov (Las Palmas,1982)



Although the pawn chains are not blocked, the white bishops can hardly be activated, as White cannot advance his pawns.

1... Nd8 2. Bd1 c5! The white bishop on a3 is constricted by the black c5-pawn and its own pawns on c3 and f4. 3. Bc1 Kf8 4. Qe2 Qc6 5. Qc2 d5 6. Bf3 Qd7 7. cd Bxd5 8. Be2

[8. Bxd5 Qxd5³ð¥ñ1]

8... Ne6 9. Be3 Ke7 10. Qd2 Qc6 11. Bf1

c4! 12. d4 a5 13. Qb2 Nc7 14. Bc1 Nb5 15. Qc2 Kf6 16. Kg1 Be4 17. Qf2 Kf7!

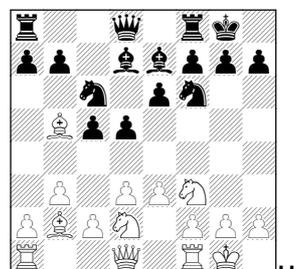
[17... Nxc3?! 18. d5!,,]

18. Bd2 Nd6 19. Qh4 h6 20. Qh5+ Kg8 21. Qg6 Bd5 22. Be1 Bf7 23. Qg3 Qe4 24. Qh4 Kh7 25. Bf2 Bd5 26. Qd8 Nb5 27. Qxb6 Nxc3 28. Qxa5 Ne2+ 29. Bxe2

[29. Kh1 c3°]

29... Qxg2# 0:1, Suba - Smyslov, (Las Palmas, 1982)

Nimzowitsch - Wolf (Karlsbad,1923)



A knight outpost in the center may outweigh the bishop pair advantages.

1. Bxc6! Exchanging the defender of the e5-point. 1... Bxc6 2. Ne5 Nd7 3. Ndf3 Rc8 4. Qe2 Nxe5

[4... f6 5. Nxc6 Rxc6 6. c4!²]

5. Nxe5 Be8 6. Qg4! f5

[6... Bf6 7. f4... !f3f »]

7. Qe2 Bf6 8. c4 Qe7 9. f4 Bf7

[¹ 9... b5,,]

10. h3! Rfd8 11. Kh2 Rc7 12. Rf2 Be8

[¹²... Bxe5 13. Bxe5 Rcd7]

13. Rg1! (preparing g4 followed by the kingside attack) 13... dc 14. bc Bxe5?! 15. Bxe5 Rcd7 16. g4!± White's attack on the kingside is strengthened thanks to the opposite color bishops' presence. 16... fg

[16... Rxd3 17. gf□]

17. Qxg4 Bg6 18. d4 cd 19. ed Bf5 20. Qh5 Bg6 21. Qe2 Rf8 22. Rg5 Rf5 23. Rfg2 Rxg5 24. Rxg5 Qf8 25. Qg4 Bf5 26. Qg2 h6 27. Rg3 Kh7 28. d5! Rf7 29. d6 g6

[29... Rd7 30. Rxg7+ Rxg7 31. Qxg7+ Qxg7 32. Bxg7 Kxg7 33. d7□]

30. c5 Qc8 31. Rc3 Qc6 32. Qxc6 bc 33. h4! Kg8

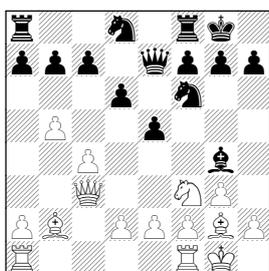
[33... Rb7 34. Rb3□]

34. Rb3 Rd7 35. Rb8+ Kf7 36. Rc8 Be4 37. Kg3 h5 38. Kf2 Bd5 39. Ke3 Bg2 40. Kd4 Bf3 41. Bh8! e5+ 42. Kxe5 Bd5 43. Bf6 Bf3 44. Bg5 Kg7 45. f5! Bg4

[45... gf 46. Bf6+ Kf7 47. Rh8 Bg4 48. Rh7+ Ke8 49. Be7□ ... ϕf6]

46. f6+ Kh7 47. Rxc6 1:0, Nimzowitsch - Wolf, (Karlsbad, 1923)

Miles - Timman (Reggio Emilia, 1984)



Even when the position is not blocked, one should avoid panic fear of the bishop pair. In the following game Black managed to tame the white bishops in the position that can in no way be called closed.

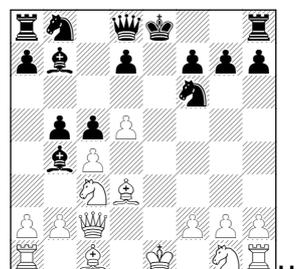
1... Ne6 2. h3 Bh5 3. Qe3 Rfe8 4. Nh4 Rab8 5. Rae1 Nd7 6. Qe4 Ndc5 7. Qf5

g5!! 8. g4

[8. Nf3? Bg6 9. Qg4 h5°]

8... Bg6 9. Nxc6 hg 10. Qc2 Nf4 11. e3 Nfd3 12. Ra1 Qf6 13. a4 Nxb2 14. Qxb2 a5! 15. ba ba 16. Qc3 Rb3 17. Qa5 Rb6 18. Rad1 e4! 19. f3 Nb3! 20. Qc3 Qxc3 21. dc Nc5→° (õà4,ñ3,ñ4) 22. a5 Rb3 23. fe Rxc3 24. e5 Rxe5 25. Bd5 Ne6 26. e4 Nf4 27. Rb1 Nxd5 28. ed Rxc4 0:1, Miles - Timman, (Reggio Emilia, 1984)

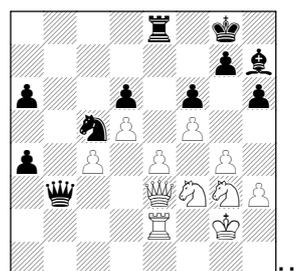
LIMITATION OF PIECES MOBILITY



Of course, it is possible to restrict mobility of both a pawn chain and pieces. We've already come across this method in the chapter "Positioning of pieces".

1. b3! O-O 2. Nge2 d6 3. O-O bc 4. bc Nbd7 5. f4!± Rubinstein - Yanovsky (Marienbad, 1925)

LEAVING THE OPPONENT'S PIECES OFFSIDE



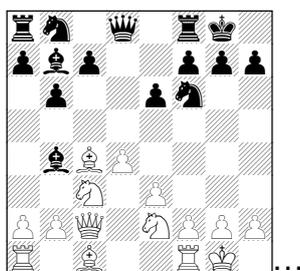
On the face of it Black has the advantage. Black has passed pawns along the "a"-file. White's pawns on c4 and e4 are weak. Black's Queen, Rook and Knight have active positions, while White's pieces occupy defensive positions. However, the Bishop on h7 is out of the game. "That's why white manoeuvres as if they had an extra piece"- Jose Raul Capablanca.

1. Nd4 Qxe3 2. Rxe3 Rb8 3. Rc3 Kf7 4. Kf3 Rb2 5. Nge2 Bg8 6. Ne6 Nb3

[6... Nxe4 7. Kxe4 Rxe2+ 8. Kd3 Rh2 9. Kd4 h5 10. c5□]

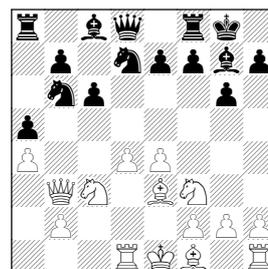
7. c5 dc 8. Nxc5 Nd2+ 9. Kf2 Ke7 10. Ke1 Nb1 11. Rd3 a3 12. d6+ Kd8 13. Nd4 Rb6 14. Nde6+ Bxe6 15. fe Rb8 16. e7+ Ke8 17. Nxa6 1:0, Capablanca - Bogoljubov (London, 1922)

Petrosian - Spassky (Moscow, m10, 1969)



1. f3! [... e4] 1... c5 2. a3 cd 3. ab dc 4. Nxc3 Nc6 5. b5 Ne5 6. Be2 Qc7 7. e4!± [x ♡f6] Petrosian - Spassky (Moscow, m10, 1969)

Botvinnik - Yudovich (Leningrad, 1933)



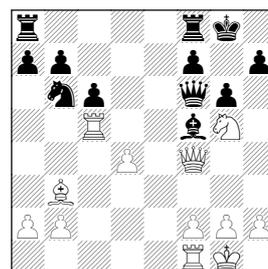
When several pieces are poorly placed, we speak about lack of co-ordination between them. Black Knights are placed very unsuccessfully. They have to defend each other and prevent development of Queen side.

1... Qc7

[1... Nf6 2. h3! Be6? 3. d5!□]

2. Be2 Qd6 [... 3... ♡b4] 3. Na2! e6 4. O-O h6 5. Rc1 f5 6. Nc3 Kh7 7. Rfd1 fe 8. Nxe4 Qb4 9. Qc2 Qxa4 10. b3 Qa3 11. Nh4! Qe7 12. Nxc6! Kxc6 13. Bh5+ ! 1:0, Botvinnik - Yudovich (Leningrad, 1933)

Liberzon - Lazarev (Moscow, 1961)



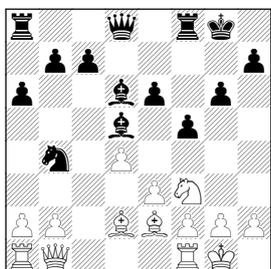
It happens that disharmony in the placing of an opponent's pieces may be exposed only with the help of a combination.

1... Rad8?!

[1... Kg7?]

2. Qh4! h5 3. Rxf5! gf
 [3... Qxf5 4. Nxf7! Rxf7 5. Qxd8+□]
 4. Qxh5 Qg7 5. Bxf7+! Rxf7 6. Nxf7 Rd5
 [6... Qxf7 7. Qg5+□]
 7. Re1! Qxd4
 [7... Qxf7 8. Re8+ Kg7 9. Qh8+ Kg6
 10. Rg8+□]
 8. Qg6+ Kf8 9. Ng5□ Liberzon - Lazarev
 (Moscow, 1961)

Feigin - Flohr (Kemer, 1937)

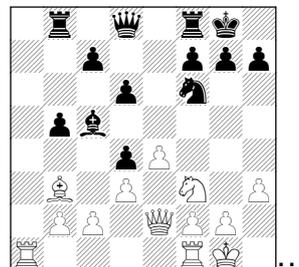


An important quality for a chess player is the ability to place his pieces harmoniously and constantly find ways to strengthen their position. With the long manoeuvre of the Knight on b4 to e4, Salo Flohr co-ordinates his pieces for an attack on the King side.

1... Nc6! 2. Bc3 Qe7 3. Rd1 Nb8! 4. Nd2 Nd7! 5. Bf3 Nf6! 6. Qd3 Ne4! 7. Qe2
 [7. Bxe4 fe 8. Nxe4 Bxh2+ 9. Kxh2 Qh4+ 10. Kg1 Bxe4 11. Qf1 Rf5°]
 7... Ng5 8. Bxd5 ed 9. Nf3 Ne4 10. Rac1 c6 11. Be1 Rae8 12. g3 Qd7 13. Qf1 g5!
 14. Rd3 f4! 15. ef gf 16. Nh4 Kh8 17. Qg2 fg 18. hg Ng5 19. f3 Nh3+ 20. Kh1
 [20. Kh2 Nf4! 21. gf Rxf4°]
 20... Be7 21. Bd2 Bxh4 22. gh Qf5 23. Rb3 Rg8 24. Qh2 Re6 25. Rf1 Nf2+!°

Feigin - Flohr (Kemer, 1937)

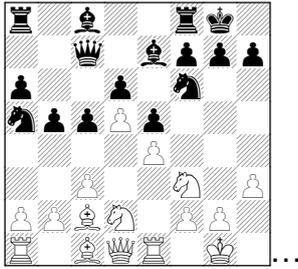
Alekhin - Duras (St. Petersburg, 1913)



It is important to know that in various opening variations some pieces have special importance. Thus, in the KINGS' INDIAN defense and DRAGON variation of the SICILIAN defense, Black's black-squared Bishop is important. Whereas In the RUY LOPEZ and SOZIN ATTACK in the SICILIAN defense, White's white-squared Bishop is active. Thanks to strong pressure of the "Spanish" Bishop on diagonal b3-f7, White gets an opportunity to start active operations in the center.

1. e5! Qe7 2. Rfe1 Rbe8 3. Qd2 de 4. Rxe5 Qd6 5. Qg5! Rxe5 6. Nxe5 Qb6 7. g4! Bd6?! 8. Nxf7! Rxf7 9. Qf5! g6 10. Qe6 Kg7 11. Qxf7+ Kh6 12. Be6□
 Alekhin - Duras (St. Petersburg, 1913)

Geller - Mecking (Palma de Majorca, 1970)



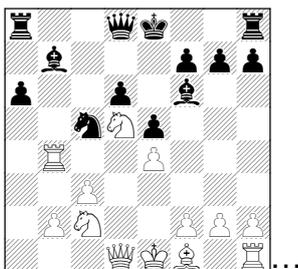
In many openings there are pieces, for which development is difficult. In the FRENCH defense it is Black's white-squared Bishop, and in the CHIGORIN defense of the RUY LOPEZ it is Black's Queen's knight. Further White's strategy is based on cutting the Knight on a5 off from the game.

1. b3!

[1. Nf1?! Nc4! 2. b3 Nb6]

1... Bd7 2. Nf1 Nb7 3. Ng3 c4 4. b4! Rfc8 5. Nf5 Bf8 6. Nh2 a5 7. Re3 ab 8. cb Bxf5 9. ef c3 10. Ng4 Be7 11. Nxf6+ Bxf6 12. Re4 [x a7, x c3] 12... Qd7 13. Qf3 Rc7 14. h4 Qe7 15. g3 Nd8 16. a3 Rcc8 17. Rb1 Rc7 18. Qe2 Rb8 19. Rb3 Qd7 20. Qf3 Be7 21. g4 f6 22. Re3 Nf7 23. Rbxc3 Rbc8 24. Be4 Geller - Mecking (Palma de Majorca, 1970)

Kasparov - Shirov (Zurich, 1994)



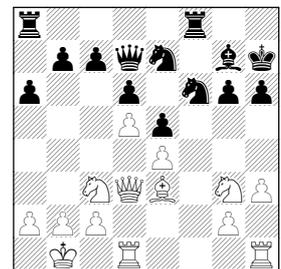
To cut the opponent's Knight off from the game, White sacrifices an exchange.

1. Rxb7!! Nxb7 2. b4! The Knight seems to enter the game using the path b7-d8-e6. But in this case the Bishop on f6 will have problems. 2... Bg5 3. Na3! O-O 4. Nc4 a5

[4... f5?! 5. Bd3 f4 6. Qg4f]

5. Bd3 ab 6. cb Qb8 7. h4! Bh6 8. Ncb6 Ra2 9. O-O Rd2 10. Qf3 Qa7 11. Nd7 Nd8? 12. Nxf8 Kxf8 13. b5! Qa3 14. Qf5! Ke8 15. Bc4 Rc2 16. Qxh7 Rxc4 17. Qg8+ Kd7 18. Nb6+ Ke7 19. Nxc4 Qc5 20. Ra1! Qd4 21. Ra3 Bc1 22. Ne3! Kasparov - Shirov (Zurich, 1994)

Neishtadt - Kotov (Moscow, 1956)



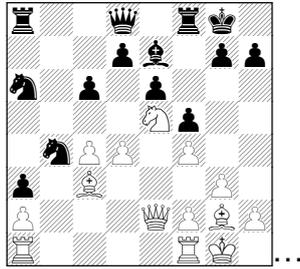
In conclusion we'd like to note that after a piece which has been 'imprisoned' gets its freedom, it becomes very active, as a rule.

1... b5! 2. Nf1 b4 3. Ne2 c6! 4. c4

[4. dc Qxc6 5. Qxd6 Qxd6 6. Rxd6 Nxe4 7. Rd7 Nf5μ]

4... bc 5. dc Qxc6 6. Nxc3 Rab8 7. Ng3 Rb4 8. Rd2 Rfb8 9. Rc1 Qb7 10. Rcc2 d5! 11. ed e4! 12. Qe2 Nexd5μ Neishtadt - Kotov (Moscow, 1956)

PIN

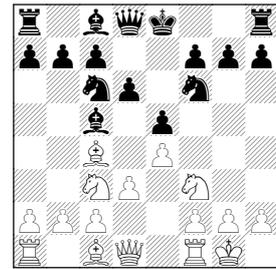


PIN

One may suggest that pin is a purely tactical weapon. However, pinning may be considered as a strategic element because a pinned piece is losing its flexibility and requires a defense, which leads to lack of coordination in the defender's camp.

1. Rab1 Rb8 2. c5! White plays on using the b4-knight pin. Soon all of Black's pieces will be fettered defending this knight. 2... Bf6(... ♝a5 òd7) 3. Rb3(òà3,♠b4) Bxe5 4. fe Qa5 5. Rfb1('b1-b8) Rb7 6. Qd2('e1-a5) Rfb8 7. Bf1!□ Qc7 8. Bxb4 Nxb4 9. Rxb4 Qa5 10. Rxb7! Qxd2 11. Rxb8+ Kf7 12. Bc4 Qxd4 13. Bb3 Qxc5 14. Rb7 Qxe5 15. Rxd7+ Kf6 16. Rbd1 c5 17. R7d6 Qc3 18. Rxe6+ Kg5 19. Re3 Qb4 20. Rc1 f4 21. Re5+ Kh6 22. Rexc5 1:0, Nimzowitsch - Tartakover, (Karlsbad, 1923)

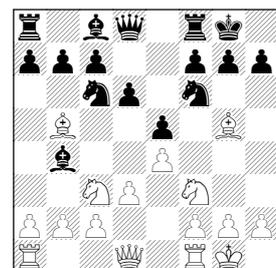
Salwe - Chigorin (Kiev,1903)



An unpleasant for your opponent pin may induce him to release from this pin at the cost of the weakening his position.

1... Bg4!(... ♝d4 xf3) 2. Bb5 O-O 3. Be3 [3. Bxc6 bc 4. Qe2!?... ♝d1-e3] 3... Nd4! 4. Bxd4 Bxd4³- 5. h3 Bh5 6. g3?! Bxc3 7. bc Nxg4! 8. hg [8. Nxe5 Nf6! 9. Ng4 (9. Nf3 c6 10. Bc4 d5µ) 9... Nxg4 10. hg Qg5 11. f3 Qxb5 12. gh Qxh5°] 8... Bxg4 9. d4 f5! 10. Be2 [10. ef e4; 10. de fe 11. Qd5+ Kh8 12. Nh2 Qg5 13. Kh1 Bf3+ 14. Nxf3 ef°] 10... fe 11. Nd2 [11. Nh2 Bh3 12. Kh1 (12. Qd2 Rf4) 12... Bxf1 13. Qxf1 Qh4°] 11... Bxe2 12. Qxe2 Qg5+ 13. Kh1 Rf4 0:1, Salwe - Chigorin, (Kiev, 1903)

Wolf - Rubinstein (Teplitz Shenau,1922)



Take a look at the classical example of a gradual liberation from a pin.

1... Bxc3!

[1... Bg4? 2. Nd5 Nd4 3. Nxb4 Nxb5 4. Nd5 Nd4 5. Qd2! Bxf3 6. Bxf6 Qd7 7. Ne7+ Kh8 8. Bxg7+ Kxg7 9. Qg5+ Kh8 10. Qf6#]

2. bc Qe7! 3. Re1 Nd8! 4. d4 Bg4!?

[4... Ne6! 5. Bc1 (5. Bh4 Nf4... ♝g6) 5... c6 6. Bf1 Rd8]

5. h3 Bh5 6. g4 Bg6 7. Nh4

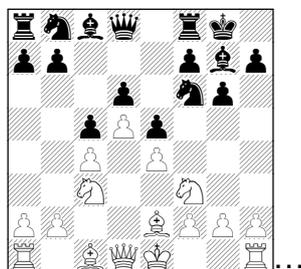
[7. d5!?? x¥g6]

7... h6! 8. Nxg6?!

[8. Nf5 Bxf5 9. Bxf6=]

8... fg 9. Bc4+ Kh7 10. Bh4 g5 11. Bg3 Nf7³ xf4 Wolf -Rubinshtein, (Teplitz Shenau,1923)

Petrosian T. - Nikolaevsky (Kiev,1957)

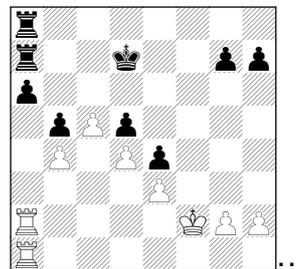


Seemingly harmless pin along the h4-d8 diagonal has given occasion to entire system in the King's Indian Defense, introduced to practice by Petrosian.

1. Bg5! Hampering Black's ♞h5 followed by f5. 1... h6 2. Bd2! Ne8 3. h4! The move h7-h6 has made Black's kingside vulnerable. 3... f5 4. h5! g5 5. ef Bxf5 6. Be3 a6 7. Nd2(♔4)! Kh8 8. Nde4 Nf6 9. Bd3 Nxe4 10. Bxe4 Bxe4 11. Nxe4± ♝¥g7

Petrosian T. - Nikolaevsky, (Kiev,1957)

PIECE BOUND TO DEFEND A WEAKNESS



PIECE BOUND TO DEFEND A WEAKNESS

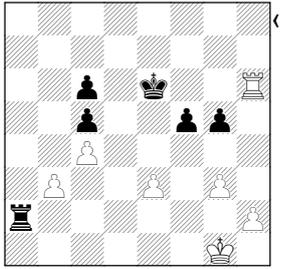
A piece, which is fettered by necessity to defend some weakness, is losing its flexibility and activity. Rather often, a piece, defending some object on one side of the board, cannot come to the rescue of pieces on the opposite flank.

1. Ra5! Fixing the weak pawn on a6. The black rooks are bound to defend it. 1... Kc6

[1... Rf8+ 2. Kg3 Rf6 3. Rxb5!□]

2. Kg3 Kb7 3. Rf1! The white rooks, unlike their black counterparts, are very mobile. 3... Kc6 4. Rf5 Re7 5. h4! The rule of two weaknesses! 5... Raa7 6. h5! Re6 7. Rf8 g6 8. h6 g5 9. Rb8 Kc7 10. Rbxb5 Rxh6 11. Ra4 Rf6 12. Rba5 Kc8 13. Kg4 h6 14. Ra2 Raf7 15. Rxa6 1:0, Nimzowitsch - Nilson A., (Copenhagen, 1924)

Lilienthal - Smyslov (Moscow,1941)



As a rule, a passive defense of weak points is unpromising. It is worthy to sacrifice a weak pawn, but to activate your sleepy pieces!

1... Ke5!

[1... Kd7? 2. Rf6□]

2. Rxc6 Ke4! Activity is the main motto in rook endings!

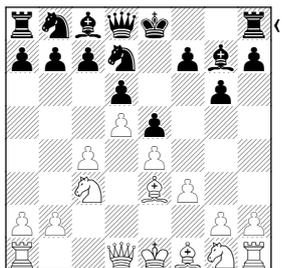
[2... Ra5? 3. Kf2□]

3. Rxc5 f4! 4. ef Kf3! 5. h3

[5. h4 Ra1+ 6. Kh2 Ra2+= 7. Kh3?? g4#]

5... Ra1+ ½:½, Lilienthal - Smyslov, (Moscow, 1941)

EXCHANGE



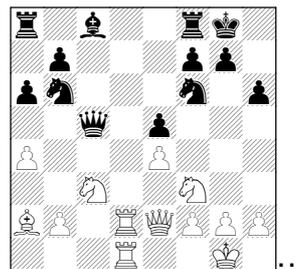
The ability to make a correct decision on what piece needs to be exchanged, and what piece - to be kept from exchange is an important criterion of the chess-player's strength. The grounds for exchanges may vary. We tend to exchange a strong opponent's piece and our own bad piece, and, vice versa, avoid exchanging our strong pieces. We also avoid simplifications in the cases when the opponent is in strained circumstances and vice versa, we strive for them when our pieces are short of space. Exchanges can help with the realisation of material or positional advantage, and they are also helpful in the defense (for example, when we strive for a Rook ending which has good drawing prospects) etc. Let's consider a few examples illustrating the art of exchange.

1... Bh6! 2. Qd2 [1 2. ♝f2]

[2. Bxh6?! Qh4+ 3. g3 Qxh6³]

2... Bxe3 3. Qxe3 a5! 4. Bd3 Na6! 5. O-O-O Qe7 6. Nge2 Ndc5 7. Bb1 Bd7³
Zurakhov - Gurgenzidze (Tbilisi, 1956)

Botvinnik - Sorokin (Moscow, 1931)



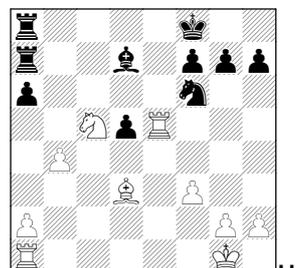
In some cases, a favourable ending is performed even at the expense of one's own pawn structure.

1. Qe3! Being ready to double pawns, White exchanges the piece, which is a stronghold of Black's defence. After the exchange of the Queens squares a5, b6 and e5 become weak. 1... Qxe3 2. fe Bg4 3. a5! Nc8 4. Rc1 Bxf3 5. gf Ne7 6. Nd5 Nc6

[6... Nfxd5 7. Bxd5! Nxd5 8. Rxd5±]

7. Nxf6+ gf 8. Rd7 Rab8 9. Kf2 Nxa5 10. Rcc7 Rbc8 11. Rxf7 Rxc7 12. Rxc7+ Kh8 13. Bd5 b5 14. b3 □ Botvinnik - Sorokin (Moscow, 1931)

Fischer - Petrosian (Buenos Aires, 1971)

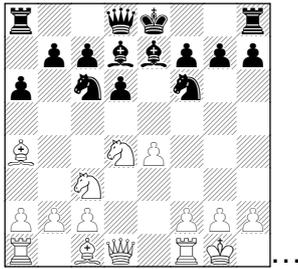


The exchange of a strong Knight for an opponent's bad Bishop looks completely paradoxical in the following game.

1. Nxd7+! Rxd7 2. Rc1! Rd6 3. Rc7 Nd7
 4. Re2 g6 5. Kf2 h5 6. f4 h4 7. Kf3! f5 8.
 Ke3 d4+ 9. Kd2 Nb6 10. Ree7 Nd5 11.
 Rf7+ Ke8 12. Rb7 Nxb4 13. Bc4!□
 Fischer - Petrosian (Buenos Aires, 1971)

1. Ng5 Na6 2. Nc3 Nc7 3. f4 h6 4. Nf3!±
 Tarrasch - Marco (Vienna, 1898)

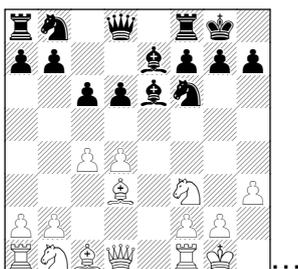
Tarrasch - Marco (Monte Carlo, 1905).



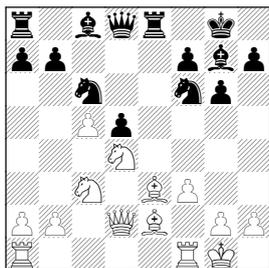
In the conclusion two examples
 of deviation from exchange.

1. Nde2! O-O 2. Ng3 Re8 3. a3 Be6 4.
 Nd5! b5 5. Bb3 Na5 6. Ba2 c6 7. Nxe7+
 Qxe7 8. Bd2 Nc4 9. Bc3! The
 Black-squared Bishop of White will be
 more active than the white-squared one.
 9... a5 10. Bxc4 Bxc4 11. Re1 Be6 12.
 Qd2 a4 13. Rad1 Rad8 14. Nf5 Bxf5 15.
 ef Qf8 16. Bxf6! gf 17. Qc3 Rxe1+ 18.
 Rxe1 Re8 19. Rd1! Qe7 20. h3± Tarrasch
 - Marco (Monte Carlo, 1905).

Tarrasch - Marco (Vienna, 1898)



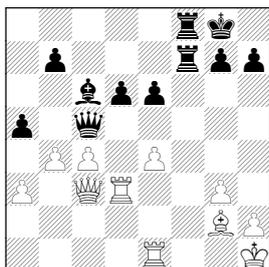
POSITIONAL SACRIFICE



Positional sacrifice is a material sacrifice for achieving certain positional or dynamic advantage.

1... Rxe3! 2. Qxe3 Qf8 © Karpov - Kasparov (New York, 1990)

Rubinstein - Spielmann (San Sebastian, 1912)

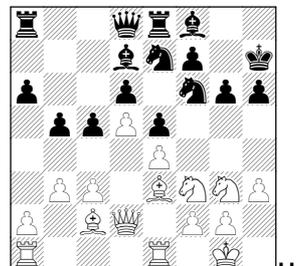


Positional sacrifices, which have nothing to do with forced variants, and based on intuition and containing an element of risk, were called "real" by Rudolf Spielmann, compared to "imaginary" sacrifices, whereby consequences may be precisely calculated.

1... Bxe4!! 2. Rxe4 Rf1+ 3. Bxf1 Rxf1+ 4. Kg2 Qf2+ 5. Kh3 Rh1! 6. Rf3 Qxh2+ 7. Kg4 Qh5+ 8. Kf4 Qh6+ 9. Kg4 g5! 10. Rxe6 Qxe6+ 11. Rf5 h6 12. Qd3 Kg7 13. Kf3 Rf1+ 14. Qxf1 Qxf5+ 15. Kg2 Qxf1+ 16. Kxf1 ab 17. ab Kf6 18. Kf2 h5°

Rubinstein - Spielmann (San Sebastian, 1912)

Tal - Ghitescu (Miskolc, 1963)



One can often come across a sacrifice of a piece for a few pawns in order to create an active pawn mass.

1. Bxc5! dc 2. Nxe5 Nc8 3. f4 Qe7 4. c4! Bg7 5. Nf3

[5. Rad1!? Nd6 6. Bd3 ©]

5... bc 6. bc Nd6! 7. e5! Nxc4 8. Qc3 Bb5 9. Rad1!

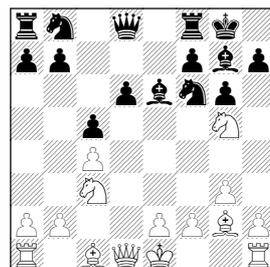
[9. ef Qxf6 ©]

9... Rad8 10. d6 Nxd6 11. ed Qb7

[11... Qf8! ?]

12. Ne5! Nd7 13. Nh5! Bh8 14. Qg3 Nxe5 15. fe Qd7 16. Nf4! □ Tal - Ghitescu (Miskolc, 1963)

Vaganian - Velimirovic (Ohrid, 1972)



Exchange sacrifice is a more sophisticated positional trick and is done for such reasons as: play on squares of a certain colour; seizure of a strategically important point; destruction of the opponent's pawn structure, etc.

1... Bxc4! 2. Bxb7 Nbd7 3. Qxd6

[3. Bxa8 Qxa8 4. O-O d5!?©]

3... h6 4. Nge4

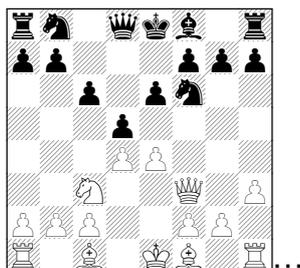
[4. Nh3!? Rb8 5. Bg2 Re8 6. O-O]

4... Nxe4 5. Bxe4 Re8 6. O-O Bxc3! 7. Bxa8 Be5 8. Qd1 Qxa8 9. Qxd7 Bd4! [... 10... ♝e6 11. ♜a4 ♝h3] 10. e3 Bxf1 11. Kxf1 Bf6 12. Qa4

[12. Kg1 Rd8 13. Qg4 Qd5°]

12... Qh1+ 13. Ke2 Re5! 14. Qd1 Qxh2 15. Bd2 Rf5 16. Qg1 Qh3 17. Rc1 Qg4+ 18. Ke1 Qf3 19. Rc4 Bxb2° Vaganian - Velimirovic (Ohrid, 1972)

Boleslavsky - Makogonov (Moscow, 12 ch URS, 1940)



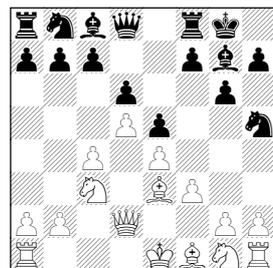
The aim of a pawn sacrifice may be: opening of a file; vacation of a square; activation of pieces; slowing down development of the opponent's forces, or weakening of squares of a certain colour, etc;

1. Bd3! de 2. Nxe4 Qxd4 3. Be3 Bb4+

[3... Qxb2 4. O-O]

4. Ke2 Qd8 5. Rhd1 Nxe4 6. Bxe4 Qe7 7. Kf1 O-O 8. Qg3 Na6 9. c3 Ba5 10. Bd3 Nc7 11. Bd4! f6 12. Qh4! g6 13. Be3 Bb6 14. Bh6 Rfd8 15. Qg3 Kh8 16. h4! [... h5] 16... Rd7 17. Bc2 Rad8 18. Rxd7 Rxd7 19. Re1 Qc5 20. Qf4 Qe7 21. Bb3 Rd8 22. Qe4! e5 23. Qf3 Nb5 24. g3 Nd6 25. Bc1 Kg7 26. Kg2 Qd7 27. g4 Re8 28. h5! gh? 29. Bh6+! Kg6 30. gh+□ Boleslavsky - Makogonov (Moscow, 12 ch URS, 1940)

Kikiani - Goldin (Moscow, 1963)



Amongst positional sacrifices one can come across a Queen sacrifice. The Queen is usually traded for a Rook and a light piece or for two pieces and several pawns, counting in the future on activity of the pieces fighting against the Queen.

1... Qh4+ 2. g3 Nxc3!? An original idea of David Bronstein. 3. Qf2 Nxf1 4. Qxh4 Nxe3 5. Ke2 Nxc4 6. Nb5 Na6 7. Rc1 Nxb2 8. Nxc7 Nxc7 9. Rxc7 b6! 10. Nh3 Ba6+ 11. Ke3 h5 12. Kf2 Rac8 13. Qe7 Bf6! 14. Qxf6

[14. Qxd6 Bh4+ 15. Kg2 Rxc7 16. Qxc7 Rc8°]

14... Rxc7 15. Qxd6 Rc2+ 16. Kg3 Nd3 17. Qa3 h4+! 18. Kxh4 Kg7 19. Kg3

[19. Qxa6 Rh8+ 20. Kg3 Rxh3+! 21.
Kxh3 Nf4+ 22. Kh4 Rg2!°]

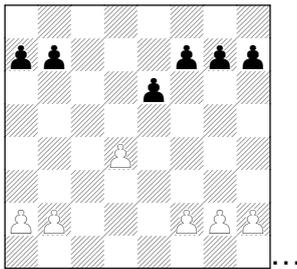
19... Rh8 20. Qe7 Rh5 21. Ng5 Rxg5+!

22. Qxg5 f6 23. Qe3

[23. Qg4 Bc8°]

23... Nf4° Kikiani - Goldin (Moscow, 1963)

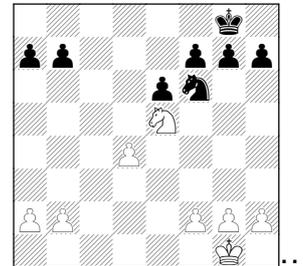
ISOLATED QUEEN'S PAWN



One comes across positions with an isolated central pawn very often. They arise from various openings; that's why every chess player should know common principles of playing this typical position. An isolated central pawn has its advantages and disadvantages. A player who has an isolated pawn, has a space superiority and doesn't have difficulties with development of pieces. With an isolated Queens pawn there are open and half-open files "c" and "e", a fortified piece outpost on the square e5, usually occupied by the Knight. These advantages of an isolated pawn are a requisite for an active game in the centre and for making an attack on the King side; and they become apparent in the middlegame. An isolated pawn has two major disadvantages. First, it cannot be defended by a pawn, which determines its chronic weakness. Second, the square in front of it may turn into a wonderful base for the opponent's pieces. These disadvantages are especially apparent with the simplification of the position and transition into an ending.

[...]

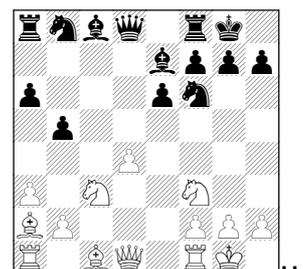
PLAYING METHODS WITH AN ISOLATED PAWN



The player, playing with an isolated pawn, has the following plans at his or her disposal: a) plan with breakthrough d4-d5; b) attack on the King side; c) progress of an isolated pawn with the aim of fixing the opponent's pawn on the next file; d) the use of the open "c"-file. Let's consider all plans one by one.

[...]

Dolmatov - Larsen (Amsterdam, 1980)



Plan with breakthrough d4-d5.

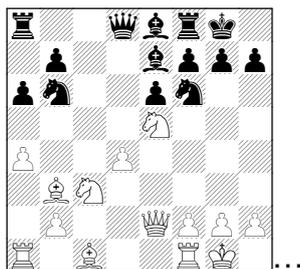
1. d5! ed 2. Nxd5 Bb7

[2... Nxd5 3. Qxd5 Ra7 4. Bf4 Qxd5 5. Bxd5 Nd7 6. Nd4]

3. Nxe7+ Qxe7 4. Bg5 Nbd7 5. Re1 Qc5

6. Be3 Qf5 7. Nh4! Qe4 8. Bg5 Qc6 9. Rc1 Qb6 10. Be3 Qd8 11. Nf5! Be4 12. Nd6 Bg6 13. Qd4 Qb8 14. f4! Rd8 15. f5 Bh5 16. h3! Nb6 17. Qxb6 Qxb6 18. Bxb6 Rxd6 19. Be3 1:0, Dolmatov - Larsen (Amsterdam, 1980)

Polugaevsky - Lutikov (Sverdlovsk, 1958)

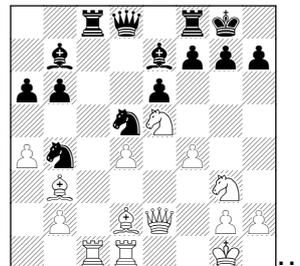


The attack on the King side is effective with the support of the Knight on e5. There are two varieties of this attack: piece attack, often with an attached Rook on the 3rd rank, and piece-and-pawn attack with the participation of the "f"-pawn.

1. Rd1! Nbd5 2. Rd3! Rc8
 [2... Nb4 3. Rg3 Qxd4? 4. Bh6!□]
 3. Rg3 Kh8 4. Bg5 Nb4 5. Rd1 Rc7
 [5... Nfd5? 6. Nxd5 Nxd5 7. Bxd5 Bxg5
 8. Bxb7□]
 6. Rh3! g6?
 [6... Nfd5? 7. Qh5□;
 6... Bc6! 7. Qe3 Ng8 8. Bf4±]
 7. Qf3 [... £f3-g3-h4] 7... Rg8 8. Ne4 Nh5
 [8... Nxe4 9. Rxh7+!□]
 9. Qxf7! Bc6
 [9... Bxf7 10. Nxf7+ Kg7 11. Nxd8□;
 9... Bxg5 10. Nxc5 Qxc5 11. Qxc7□]
 10. Qxe6 Rg7 11. d5 Bd7 12. Bxe7 Rxe7

13. Qd6 Qe8 14. Nf6 Nxf6 15. Qxf6+ Rg7
 16. d6 1:0, Polugaevsky - Lutikov (Sverdlovsk, 1958)

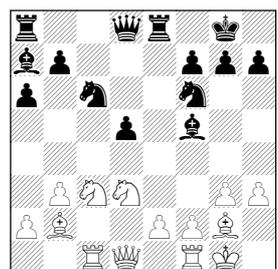
Em.Lasker - Maroczy (Paris, 1900)



In the next example it was a piece-and-pawn attack with the participation of the "f"-pawn that was effective.

1. f5! Rxc1 2. Rxc1 ef 3. Nxf5 Bf6 4. Bxb4! Nxb4 5. Nxf7! Rxf7 6. Qe6 Kh8
 [6... Bd5 7. Bxd5 Qxd5 8. Rc8+ Bd8 9. Ne7+□;
 6... Nd5 7. Nd6 Qd7 8. Qxf7+ Qxf7 9. Nxf7 Kxf7 10. Rc7+□]
 7. Qxf7 Bxd4+ 8. Kh1 Nd3 9. Rf1 Bxg2+
 10. Kxg2 Qg5+ 11. Kh3□ Em.Lasker - Maroczy (Paris, 1900)

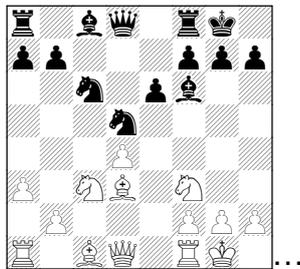
Flohr - Spassky (Sochi, 1965)



Progress of an isolated pawn with the aim of fixing the opponent's pawn on the next file.

1... d4! 2. Na4 Be4! 3. Nac5 Bxg2 4. Kxg2 Qd5+ 5. Kh2 Ne4 6. Nxe4 Rxe4 7. Rc2 Rae8 8. Bc1 f6 9. f3 R4e7 10. Ba3 Rf7 11. Nb4 Nxb4 12. Bxb4 Qb5 13. Ba3 h5 14. Qd3 Qxd3 15. ed Re3 16. Rd2 Rc7 17. Kg2 Kf7 18. Rc1 Rc3 19. Rcd1 Ke6µ
 Flohr - Spassky (Sochi, 1965)

Smyslov - Ribli (London, m7, 1983)



Use of an open "c"-file . The party which has an isolated pawn, as a rule, chooses the center and King side as their field of active operations. However, sometimes active operations on the Queen side are possible with the use of the open "c"-file.

1. Be4 Nce7 2. Ne5 g6 3. Bh6 Bg7 4. Bxg7 Kxg7 5. Rc1! b6 6. Nxd5! Nxd5 7. Bxd5! Qxd5

[7... ed was leading to a typical position, where the Knight is stronger than the Bishop.]

8. Rc7! Bb7

[8... Qd6? 9. Rxf7+! Rxf7 10. Nxf7 Kxf7 11. Qf3+□]

9. Qg4! Rad8

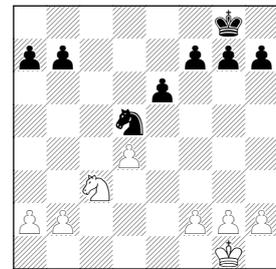
[9... Rac8 10. Rd7 Qe4 11. Qxe4 Bxe4 12. f3 Bd5 13. Rxa7 Rc2 14. b4±]

10. Rd1 a5 11. h4! [x g6] 11... Rc8 12. Rd7 Qe4 13. Qg5 Bc6 14. f3 Qf5 15. Ra7 Ba4 16. Re1 Rc2

[16... Qxg5 17. hg±]

17. b4 Bb3 18. ba ba 19. Re4! h6 20. Qe3 Rb2 21. Rg4! g5 22. hg□ Smyslov - Ribli (London, m7, 1983)

METHODS OF PLAY AGAINST AN ISOLATED PAWN



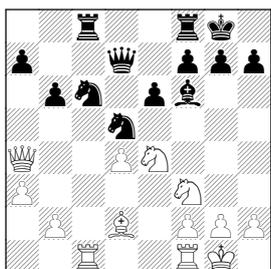
In the struggle against an isolated pawn two main plans are applied :

- a) Simplification of the position and transition into an ending;
- b) Creation of a pawn pair c3-d4 (c6-d5).

An example of a position simplification.

[...]

Liptay - Portisch (Budapest, 1965)



Simplification of the position and transition into an ending.

1... Ne5! 2. Qxd7

[2. Qb3 Nxf3+ 3. Qxf3 Bxd4°;

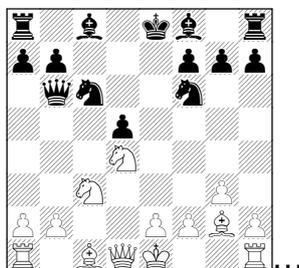
2. Nxf6+ Nxf6 3. Qb3 Nxf3+ 4. Qxf3 Qxd4 5. Bc3 Qe4 6. Bxf6 Qxf3 7. gfµ]

2... Nxd7 3. Nc3 Nxc3! 4. Bxc3

[4. bc Rc4µ]

4... Rc7 5. Bd2 Rfc8 6. Rxc7 Rxc7 7. Rc1 Rxc1+ 8. Bxc1 Kf8 9. Kf1 Ke7 10. Bf4 b5 11. Ke2 Nb6 12. Kd3 Kd7 13. Ke4 Nc4 14. Bc1 Nd6+ 15. Kd3 Kc6 16. Ne1 a5! 17. Nc2 a4! 18. Nb4+ Kd7 19. g3 Nc4 20. f4 Be7 21. Nc2 Kc6 22. Ne3 Nxe3 23. Bxe3 Kd5µ Liptay - Portisch (Budapest, 1965)

Rubinstein - Salve (Lodz, 1908)



Creation of an isolated pawn pair c3+d4 (or c6+d5 for black) .

1. Nxc6! bc 2. O-O Be7 3. Na4! Qb5 4. Be3! O-O 5. Rc1! Bg4 6. f3! Be6 7. Bc5! Rfe8 8. Rf2! Nd7 9. Bxe7 Rxe7 10. Qd4! [x c5] 10... Ree8 11. Bf1! Rec8 12. e3! Qb7 13. Nc5 Nxc5 14. Rxc5 Rc7 15. Rfc2 Qb6?

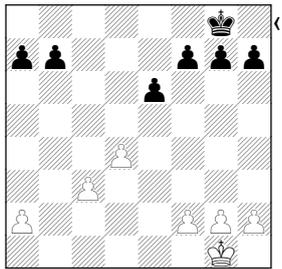
[15... a5!]

16. b4! a6 17. Ra5 Rb8 18. a3 Ra7

[18... Bc8 19. Qxb6 Rxb6 20. Rxd5!□]

19. Rxc6! Qxc6 20. Qxa7 Ra8 21. Qc5□ Rubinstein - Salve (Lodz, 1908)

A PAWN PAIR c3+d4 ON THE SEMI-OPEN FILES



A PAWN PAIR c3+d4 ON THE SEMI-OPEN FILES

Imagine that you play with an isolated queen's pawn, your opponent captures your knight on c3 (c6) and you recapture with the b-pawn. A pawn pair c3+d4 (c6+d5) arises. If you would advance your c-pawn to c4 (c5) then the "hanging pawns" structure arises. In other words, the c3+d4 pawn pair is a transitional stage from the isolated queen's pawn to the hanging pawns. So this pawn pair inherited to some extent advantages and drawbacks of the IQP. This fact in many respects determines plans of both sides.

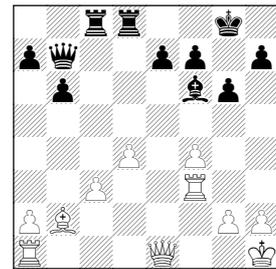
White tries to maintain pressure on the kingside making use of the semi-open e-file and the outpost on e5. Another plan involves preparation of c3-c4 advance which increases this pawn pair's potential energy. Sometimes White develops his initiative on the queenside, pushing his a-pawn and pressurizing along the b-file.

Black's main intention is to keep up the pressure against the pawns on c3 and d4 along the c- and d-files. His dream is a complete blockade of these pawns

followed by an attack on the a-pawn. As a rule, transition to an endgame favors Black as this lowers the danger of White's kingside attack.

1... b6

AGAINST



Black is close to an ideal for him position. Very soon the white pawn pair will be blocked. The light squares in White's camp are severely weak and his b2-bishop is stupid-looking.

1... Qd5 2. Qe3 Qb5! 3. Qd2 Rd5! 4. h3 e6! (õf5) 5. Re1 Qa4!(õà2) 6. Ra1 b5! 7. Qd1 Rc4! 8. Qb3 Rd6 9. Kh2 Ra6! 10. Rff1 Be7 11. Kh1 Rcc6!(... £ñ4,ìà4,ìñà6) 12. Rfe1 Bh4! 13. Rf1

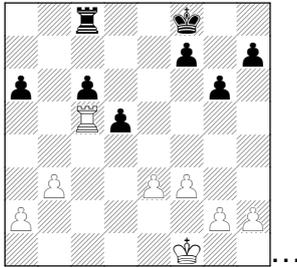
[13. Re2 Qxb3! 14. ab Rxa1+ 15. Bxa1 Ra6 16. Bb2 Ra2 17. b4 (17. Kh2 a5!) 17... Bg3 18. d5 Bxf4°]

13... Qc4 14. Qxc4 Rxc4 15. a3 Be7 16. Rfb1 Bd6! 17. g3 Kf8 18. Kg2 Ke7 19. Kf2 Kd7 20. Ke2 Kc6 21. Ra2 Rca4 22. Rba1 Kd5 23. Kd3 R6a5 24. Bc1 a6 25. Bb2 h5!(... h4) 26. h4 f6! 27. Bc1 e5! 28. fe fe 29. Bb2

[29. de Bxe5 30. Bf4 Bxf4 31. gf Ke6°] 29... ed 30. cd b4! [...] 0:1, Thomas - Alekhin, (Baden, 1925)

[31. ab Rxa2 32. ba Rxb2°]

Flohr - Vidmar (Nottingham,1936)



Even when material on the board is limited, the blocked pawn pair is a constant headache for its owner.

1. Ke2 Ke7 2. Kd3 Kd6 3. Ra5!(õà6) Ra8
4. Kd4 f5 5. b4! Rb8?!

[5... Kc7! 6. Kc5 Kb7 7. Kd6 Re8!,,õå3]

6. a3 Ra8 7. e4! fe 8. fe de 9. Kxe4 Ra7?!

[9... Kc7! 10. Re5 Kb6 11. Re7 a5 12.

Rxh7 ab 13. ab Ra4 14. Rg7 Rxb4+

15. Kf3 Rh4 16. h3 Rh6 17. Kg4 c5 18.

Kg5 Rh8 19. Rxg6+ Kb5 20. Rg7 c4

21. h4 Rc8,,]

10. Kf4 h6 11. h4! Ke6

[11... Kc7 12. Ke5 Kb6 13. Kf6□]

12. Kg4 Ra8 13. h5! g5

[13... gh+ 14. Kxh5 Rg8 15. g4□]

14. g3 Ra7 15. Kf3 Ra8 16. Ke4 Ra7 17.

Kd4 Kd6 18. Ke4 Ke6 19. Re5+! Kd6

[19... Kf6 20. Rc5 Rc7 21. Ra5 Ra7 22.

Kd4±]

20. Re8! c5 21. Rd8+ Kc6

[21... Kc7 22. Rh8 cb 23. Rh7+! Kb6

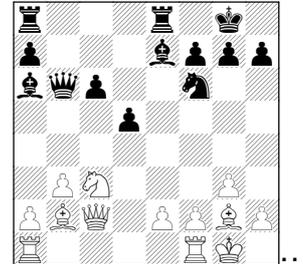
24. Rxa7 Kxa7 25. ab Kb6 26. Kf5□]

22. Rc8+ Kb6 23. Rxc5 Rh7 24. Re5 Kc6

25. Re6+ Kb5 26. Kf5 Rf7+ 27. Rf6 1:0,

Flohr - Vidmar, (Nottingham, 1936)

Furman - Mikenas (Tallinn,1965)



White would like to exchange the dark-squared bishops to blockade the black pawn pair. Furman prepares this exchange with rooks maneuver |d1-d4-a4.

1. Rfd1 Ng4 2. e3 Qc5 3. Rac1 Qd6 4. Rd4! h5 5. Ra4! Bc8 6. Ba3! Qe6 7. Bxe7 Qxe7 8. e4! Qg5

[8... de 9. Nxe4±]

9. h4 Qg6 10. Ne2! Bd7 11. Nf4 Qh6 12.

Ra6! g5 13. hg Qxg5 14. ed cd 15. Bxd5

Bf5 16. Qd2 Rad8 17. Rxa7□ Be6 18.

Rd1 Rd6 19. Ra5 Qh6 20. Qc1 h4 21.

Nxe6 hg 22. Qxh6 gf+ 23. Kf1 Nxe6 24.

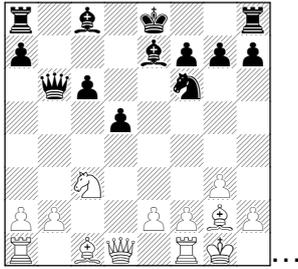
Nf4 Ng4 25. Ng2 Rf6 26. Bf3 Rxf3 27.

Rg5+ Kf8 28. Rxg4 Ra8 29. Rd2 Rc8 30.

Rxf2 Rxf2+ 1:0, Furman - Mikenas,

(Tallinn, 1965)

Korchnoi - Bronstein (Moscow,1959)



Sometimes white hits the c6+d5 pawn pair with e2-e4. This aggressive method leads to an isolation of the c6-pawn.

1. b3

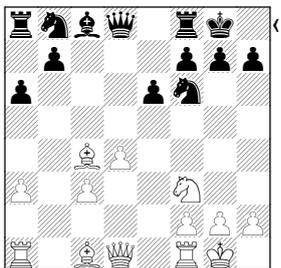
[1. e4!? de 2. Be3 Qxb2 3. Nxe4 O-O 4. Bd4 Qa3 5. Bxf6 Bxf6 6. Nxf6+ gf 7. Qh5@f», Boleslavsky - Stolz, Bucharest 1953]

1... Be6 2. Bb2 O-O 3. Rc1 Rac8 4. e4! de

[4... d4? 5. Na4]

5. Nxe4 Rfd8 6. Qe2 Nd5 7. Qh5! h6 8. Qe5! Bf8 9. Nc5 Re8 10. Nxe6 Rxe6 11. Qf5±-, õñ6 Korchnoi - Bronstein, (Moscow,1959)

Dolmatov - Psakhis (Yerevan,1982)



One may even sacrifice a pawn for the blockade of the c3+d4 pawn pair.

1... b5! 2. Bd3 Qd5 3. a4! Bb7 4. Qe2 Rc8!

[4... ba 5. Rxa4... ñ4±]

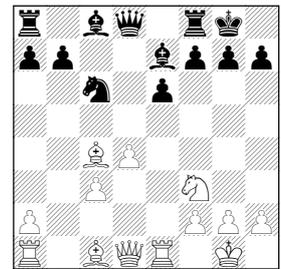
5. ab ab 6. Rxa8 Bxa8 7. Bd2 Ne4!

[7... Bc6 8. Rb1... ¥b5±]

8. Bxe4 Qxe4 9. Qxb5 Bd5@ (õd5,c4) 10. Re1 Qg6 11. Qe2 Nc6 12. Bf4 Na5! 13. Nh4 Qf6 14. Qg4 h6 15. Qg3 Nc4! 16. h3 Kh7 17. Qd3+ Kg8 18. Bg3 g5 19. Nf3 [...]

[19... Bxf3 20. Qxf3 Qxf3 21. gf Nd2=]

Poulsen - Farago I. (Gausdal,1976)



In this game the pawn pair c3+d4 was crushed with an unexpected combinational blow.

1... b6 2. Bd3 Bb7 3. Qc2 g6!

[3... h6 4. Qe2!... £å4]

4. Qd2 Bf6 5. h4 Rc8!

[5... Bxh4? 6. Qh6 Bf6 7. Ng5 Bxg5 8. Bxg5 f6 9. Bxg6! hg 10. Qxg6+ Kh8 11. Rxe6,»]

6. h5? Nxd4!! 7. Nxd4

[7. cd Bxf3 8. gf Bxd4 9. Rb1 Bc3°]

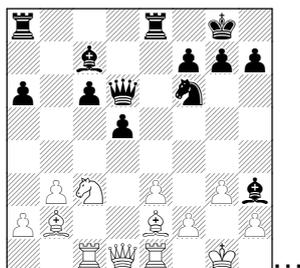
7... Rxc3!! 8. Qxc3 Bxd4 9. Qc2 Bxa1 10. Ba3

[10. Bh6 Bg7°]

10... Qg5! 11. Be4 Rc8 12. Qe2 Bxe4 13. Qxe4 Bg7° 14. Qb7 Qd8 15. hg hg 16.

Qxa7 Qd2 17. Re3 Qd1+ 18. Kh2 Qh5+
19. Kg1 Be5 20. g3 Rd8 21. Re1 Bd4 22.
Qb7 Qa5 0:1, Poulsson - Farago I.,
(Gausdal, 1976)

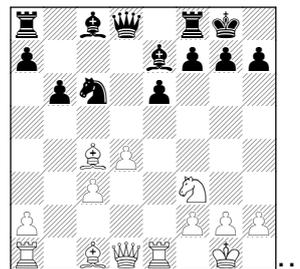
Gelfand - Khenkin (Riga,1987)



Owner of the pawn pair strives to advance the c-pawn. As a rule, his opponent tries to prevent this advance. However, sometimes it makes sense to allow the c-pawn move because the hanging pawns may turn out to be weak.

1. Qd4!
[1. Na4 Ba5! 2. Bc3 Bxc3 3. Nxc3 Re5!
4. Na4 Ne4!f» 5. Qd4 Rg5! 6. f4
Rxc3+! 7. hg Qg6 8. g4 Bxc4 9. Rxc6
Be6+ 10. Kh1 Qg3 11. Rf1 Bh3 12. Bf3
Bxf1 13. Bxe4 de 14. Rc2 Qf3+ 15.
Kg1 Be2 16. Qd2 Qg3+ 0:1, Gavrikov -
Zaichik, Riga (USSR
Championship)1980]
1... c5 2. Qh4! Bf5 3. Red1 Rad8 4. Qg5!
Bg6 5. Nxd5! Nxd5 6. Bf3 Qe7 7. Rxd5
Qxg5 8. Rxc5 Rd2 9. Bc3 Rxa2 10.
Rxc5± Bb6 11. Re5 Rc8 12. Bb7 Rb8 13.
Bd5 h6 14. h4 Rc8 15. h5 Bxh5 16. Rxh5
Ba5 17. b4 1:0, Gelfand - Khenkin, (Riga,
1987)

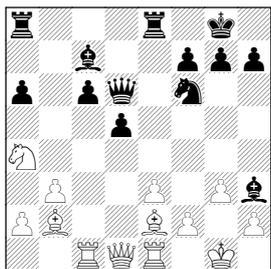
FOR



Kingside attack is the most attractive plan for a pawn pair owner.

1. Bd3! Bb7 2. Qc2 g6
[2... h6 3. Qe2!... £à4f»]
3. Bh6 Re8 4. Qd2 Rc8 5. Rab1! Bf6?!
[5... Qd5 6. Rb5!;
5... Bf8!]
6. h4! Qd6
[6... Bxh4? 7. Nxc4 Qxc4 8. Bg5 Qg4
9. Re4 Qf5 10. Re5 Qg4 11. Be2□]
7. Bf4 Qa3
[7... e5 8. Bg3±;
7... Qf8!?]
8. h5! Na5 9. Be5 Qe7
[9... Bxe5 10. Nxe5 Qxc3 11. Qf4±]
10. Bxf6 Qxf6 11. Ne5 Red8 12. Ng4 Qg7
[12... Qh4 13. Qf4±]
13. hg hg 14. Qg5 Kf8 15. Rb5! Nc6 16.
Nf6 Ne7 17. Re3!(... !h3) Ng8 18. Nxc8
Kxc8 19. Qe7 Bc6 20. Rbe5 Rd7 21. Qh4
Qh8 22. Qf4 Qg7 23. Rg3 Bd5 24. Reg5
Rxc3 25. Bxc6 Rxc3 26. Bxf7+! Kf8
[26... Rxf7 27. Qxc3□]
27. Rxc7 Rxc7 28. Bxe6+ 1:0, Botvinnik -
Ragozin, (Bolshevo, 1947)

Gavrikov - Zaichik (Riga,1980)



The rook usually joins the attack via e-file.

1... Ba5!

[1... Ne4 2. Qd4!?

2. Bc3 Bxc3 3. Nxc3 Re5! 4. Na4?!

[4. Qd4!? c5 5. Qh4]

4... Ne4! 5. Qd4 Rg5! 6. f4

[6. Nc5? Nxc3! 7. hg Rxc3+°]

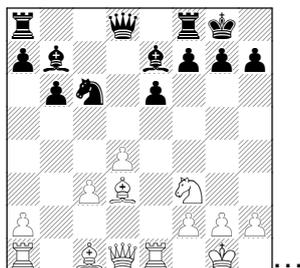
6... Rxc3+! 7. hg Qg6 8. g4 Bxc4 9. Rxc6

[9. Bxc4 Qxc4+ 10. Kf1 Qf3+ 11. Kg1 Qf2+ 12. Kh1 Ng3#]

9... Be6+! 10. Kh1 Qg3! 11. Rf1 Bh3 12. Bf3 Bxf1 13. Bxe4 de 14. Rc2 Qf3+ 15.

Kg1 Be2 16. Qd2 Qg3+ 0:1, Gavrikov - Zaichik, (Riga, 1980)

Razuvaev - Farago I. (Dubna,1979)



The kingside attack may be substantially strengthened by the h-pawn march. In the following game, which was a milestone for Queen's Gambit theory, White

sacrificed his rook's pawn.

1. h4! Na5

[1... Bxh4!? 2. Nxh4 Qxh4 3. Re3!©, f5!? (3... h6? 4. Rh3 Qf6 5. Qg4 Kh8 6. Bg5!□; 3... g6 4. Rg3 Qe7 5. Bg5 f6 6. Bh6 Rf7©) 4. Rxe6f]

2. Ng5! h6?!

[2... Bxg5! 3. Bxg5 Qd5 4. Qg4 f5 5. Qg3 Rac8 6. Bf1!?

3. Qh5! Bd5 4. Nh7 Re8 5. Bxh6! gh 6. Qxh6 f5

[6... Bxh4 7. Ng5! Qxc5 8. Bh7+ Kh8 9. Bg6+ Kg8 10. Qh7+ Kf8 11. Qxf7#]

7. Re3! Bxh4 8. Rg3+! Bxc3 9. Qg6+ Kh8 10. Nf6 Bh2+ 11. Kh1!□

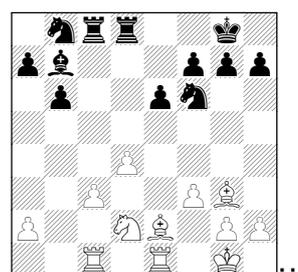
[11. Kxh2? Qc7+ 12. Kg1 Re7 13. Qh6+ Rh7°]

11... Qxf6 12. Qxf6+ Kg8 13. Kxh2 Rac8

14. Rh1 Rc7 15. Qg6+ Kf8 16. Kg1 Rf7

17. Qg5 Rg7 18. Rh8+ Kf7 19. Qh5+ 1:0, Razuvaev - Farago I., (Dubna, 1979)

Sherbakov R. - Maceja (Polanica Zdroj,1996)



As we have already said, owner of the c3+d4 pawn pair should strive to advance his c-pawn. The hanging pawns (c4+d4) have more energy and control more space in the center. In a more detailed way the hanging pawns are discussed in

the corresponding chapter.

1. Bf1!

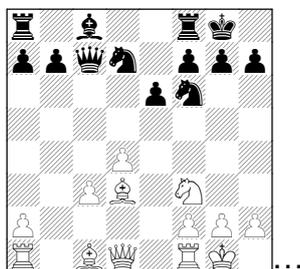
[1. Bf2(... ñ4) e5!³]

1... h6 2. Bf2!(... ñ4†) Ba6

[2... Nc6 3. Nb3!... ñ4²]

3. c4! Ne8 4. a4!(... à5õb6) Nc6 5. Nb3 Nd6 6. d5! ed 7. cd Nb4 8. Bxa6 Nxa6 9. Nd4²(žd5,õñ6) Rxc1 10. Rxc1 Rd7 11. Bg3 Kh7 12. Rc6 Nb7 13. d6 Nac5 14. Rc7 Nd8 15. Nb5 a6 16. Nc3 Nde6 17. Nd5 b5 18. a5!(õà6) f6 19. Kf1±(... øe1-d2-c3-b4) Rd8? 20. Nxf6+ Kg6 21. Nd5 Nb3 22. Ne7+ Kf6 23. Nc6□ Rf8 24. Be5+ Kg6 25. Re7 Nbc5 26. Nd4 Nxd4 27. Bxd4 1:0, Sherbakov R. - Maceja, (Polanica Zdroj, 1996)

Dolmatov - Flesh (Bukharest,1981)



1. Ba3! Black lacks the dark-squared bishop, and White skillfully exploits this. Instead of a banal kingside attack he exerts pressure along the diagonals a3-f8 and h1-a8.

[Standard continuations are 1. Bg5 b6

2. Rc1 Bb7› or;

1. c4 b6 2. Bb2 Bb7›]

1... Re8

[¹ 1... Rd8]

2. Nd2!(... ðñ4õd6) Rd8

[2... Qxc3? 3. Nc4□õ£ñ3;

2... b6 3. Nc4 Bb7 4. Nd6±]

3. Qf3!(‘f3-a8)

[3. Nc4 Nf8²]

3... Nf8 4. Ne4! Nxe4 5. Bxe4±% Nd7(... ðf6) 6. Be7! Re8 7. Bh4! f5?! 8. Bc2 Nb6 9. Bb3 Bd7 10. Bg3 Qc6 11. Qxf5 Qxc3 12. Be5 Qb4

[12... Qxb3 13. Qg5□]

13. Qh5 Rac8 14. f4!(... f5;f3,») g6

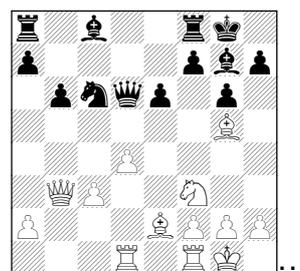
[14... Bc6 15. Qg4 Qe7 16. Bxe6+□;

¹ 14... Nc4]

15. Qh4 Qe7 16. Bf6 Qf7 17. f5! Nd5 18. fg Qxg6 19. Rf3 Nxf6 20. Rg3□ Kg7 21. Rf1 Rf8 22. Rxg6+ hg 23. Qg5 Rc6 24. Qe5 Rb6 25. g4 Rb5 26. d5 [...] 1:0, Dolmatov - Flesh, (Bukharest, 1981)

[26... ed 27. g5□]

Smyslov - Martinovic S. (Groningen,1989)

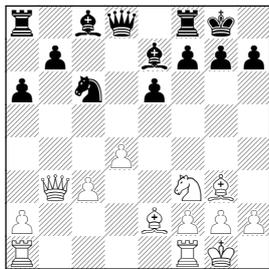


In this game the fianchettoed g7-bishop hampered White both a kingside attack and the c3-c4 advance. Smyslov in a masterly fashion exploited a drawback of the black bishop position. With the ðf3-d2-e4 maneuver he revealed weaknesses in the opponent's camp, namely the d6- and f6-squares.

1. Nd2! Na5 2. Qb4! Qc7
[2... Qxb4 3. cb Nc6 4. Bf3 Bb7 5. Nc4^{2f}]
3. Ne4 h6
[3... Bb7 4. Nf6+ Kh8 5. d5! Qe5 6. Qh4!! h6 7. f4! Qxe2 8. Bxh6□]
4. Qe7! Qxe7
[4... Bd7 5. Bxh6! Bxh6 6. Qxd7 Qxd7 7. Nf6+ Kg7 8. Nxd7 Rfd8 9. Ne5±]
5. Bxe7 Re8 6. Nf6+ Bxf6 7. Bxf6 Bb7
[7... Kh7 8. Bb5! Rg8 9. Rd3!±]
8. Rd3!±-» Bd5
[8... Ba6 9. Rh3 Bxe2 10. Rxh6□]
9. Rh3 Kh7 10. Re1 e5 11. de Nc4 12. Bxc4 [...] 1:0, Smyslov - Martinovic S., (Groningen, 1989)
[12... Bxc4 13. Re4 Be6 14. Rxh6+ Kxh6 15. Rh4#]

Ra4 Qe7 9. Rb1 d4 10. Rxb4 Bxb4 11. Qxb4 Qxb4 12. Rxb4 Bxf3 13. gf Rad8 14. Bd3±- Re1+ 15. Kg2 g6 16. Bc7 Rd5 17. f4 Kg7 18. Bb6 Kh6 19. Rb3 Rc1 20. Rb2 Rd1 21. Be2 Ra1 22. Rd2 Ra3 23. Bxa6 g5 24. Rd3 Ra4 25. Bc8 gf 26. Kf3 Rh5 27. h3 Rc4 28. Bg4 Rc3 29. Rxc3 dc 30. Bxh5 c2 31. Bc7 1:0, Cherniaev - Khenkin, (Biel, 1994)

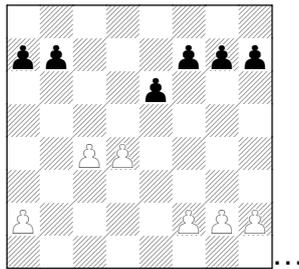
Cherniaev - Khenkin (Biel,1994)



In conclusion of this chapter let us quote an example of the queenside activity involving the a2-a4 thrust.

- 1... b5(♘4) 2. Rfd1 Bb7 3. a4! b4 4. d5!
ed
[4... Na5 5. Qb1! bc 6. de Qc8 7. ef+ Rxf7 8. Qa2±]
5. cb Nxb4 6. a5! (♝b) Re8 7. Bf1 Bc5 8.

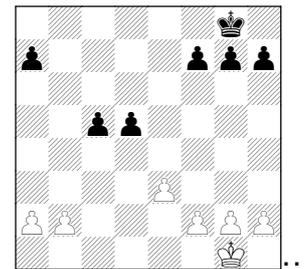
HANGING PAWNS



Positions with hanging pawns are typical and arise from various openings (the TARTAKOVER variation in QUEEN'S gambit, QUEEN'S INDIAN defense, NIMZO-INDIAN defense etc.). Hanging pawns often arise from a pawn pair c3-d4 by moving the c3 pawn to c4. Hanging pawns have advantages and disadvantages. Their disadvantage is that they can not be protected by other pawns and pressure on them along the files "c" and "d" may turn out unpleasant. That's why without pieces to support them they become objects of attack. It can happen in the Middlegame too, but more characteristic of Ending type positions. The strength of hanging pawns is in their control over a complex of important central squares which determines a space advantage. With their coverage it is possible to prepare active operations on the wings or link one's plans with moving one of the hanging pawns forward. Also, a side which has hanging pawns may use the semi-open files "b" and "e" to their advantage.

[...]

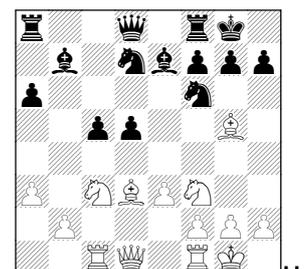
FIGHT AGAINST HANGING PAWNS



In the fight against hanging pawns the following methods can be used: a) piece pressure on hanging pawns; b) undermining them with the help of pawns "b" and "e"; c) simplification of the position in order to reduce the dynamic potential of the hanging pawns. One of the aims of piece pressure on hanging pawns is to make one of them move, thus causing a blockade of the whole pawn pair.

[...]

Capablanca - Alekhin (Buenos Aires, m17, 1927)



Piece pressure on hanging pawns .

1. Qe2! Re8 2. Bc2! [... ♠f1-d1, ♚c2-a4.]

2... Qb6 3. Rfd1 Rad8 4. Na4

[4. Ba4!? Bc6 5. Bxc6 Qxc6 6. Rd2?]

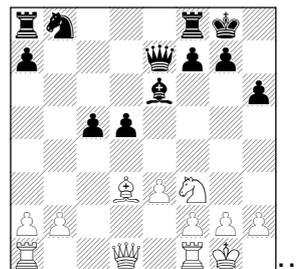
4... Qb5

[4... Qa5 5. Bf4?]

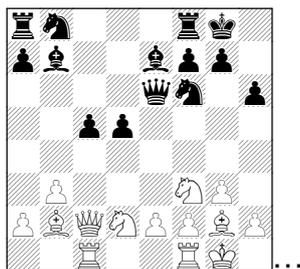
5. Qxb5 ab 6. Nc3 Bc6 7. Bd3! c4

[7... Rb8 8. Bf5 [... ♣d7]]

8. Bf5 b4 9. ab Bxb4 10. Nd4 Bb7 11.
Bxd7 Rxd7 12. Bxf6 gf± Capablanca -
Alekhin (Buenos Aires, m17, 1927)



Ragozin - Tsvetkov (Moscow, 1947)



Undermining hanging pawns with the help of "b"-pawn.

1. b4! [x d4] 1... Nbd7

[1... cb 2. Nd4 Qd7 3. Nf5 Bd8 4. Nb3 Na6 5. Bh3±]

2. bc Bxc5 3. Nb3 Rfc8 4. Nxc5 Rxc5 5. Qb3 Qb6 6. Bd4! Qxb3 7. ab Rb5 8. Nd2 a5 9. Rc7 a4 10. Ra1 a3 11. e3 Kf8 12. Bf1 Rb4 13. Rc2 Ke7 14. Rca2 Kd6 15. Rxa3 Rxa3 16. Rxa3 Nc5 17. Bc3 Rb6 18. f3 Bc8 19. e4 Ragozin - Tsvetkov (Moscow, 1947)

Uhlmann - Kottnauer (Tel Aviv, 1964)

Undermining hanging pawns with the help of "e"-pawn.

1. e4! d4?!

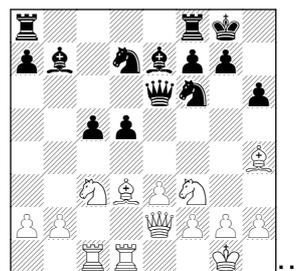
[1... Rd8! 2. ed Bxd5 3. Qe2 Qf6 4. Rfd1 Nc6 5. Be4 Nd4! 6. Nxd4 cd=]

2. Nd2! Nd7 3. f4! f6 4. Qf3 Rfc8 5. e5! fe

[5... f5 6. g4!±]

6. Qe4 Nf6 7. Qxe5 Qf7 8. b3! Ng4 9. Qe4 Nf6 10. Qf3 Bd5 11. Qg3 Kh8 12. Rae1 a5 13. Nc4 Bxc4 14. Bxc4± Uhlmann - Kottnauer (Tel Aviv, 1964)

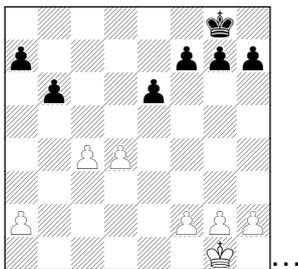
Akopian - G.Giorgadze (Lvov, 1990)



Simplification of a position in order to reduce the dynamic potential of hanging pawns. As we'll see further, one of the plans of the player who has the hanging pawns is active operations against the position of the opponent's King. That's why reasonable simplifications lead to weakening of this tendency.

1. Qc2! [... ♣f5] 1... Rfd8
[1... g6? 2. Bxg6! fg 3. Qxg6+ Kh8 4. Qxh6+ Kg8 5. Qg6+ Kh8 6. Ng5 Qg4 7. Qh6+ Kg8 8. Nxd5!□]
2. Bf5 Qa6
[2... Qb6? 3. Na4±]
3. Qa4! Nb6 4. Qxa6 Bxa6 5. Ne5 Rd6 6. Nd3 Rc6 7. e4 g5
[7... d4 8. Nd5 Nbx d5 9. ed Nxd5 10. Be4□]
8. ed Nfx d5 9. Nxd5 Nxd5 10. Bg3 Bb7
11. Bd7 Rb6 12. Nxc5 Bxc5 13. Rxc5 Rxb2 14. h4! Nf4
[14... gh 15. Be5□;
14... Nb6 15. Bh3! gh 16. Bxh4 Rxa2 17. Rd6!□]
15. hg Ne2+ 16. Kh2 Nxc3 17. Kxc3 Rxa2 18. gh□ Akopian - G.Giorgadze (Lvov, 1990)

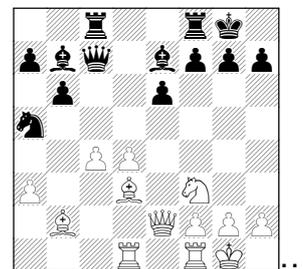
METHODS OF PLAY WITH AN HANGING PAWNS



The player who has hanging pawns, has the following typical plans: a) breakthrough d4-d5 (d5-d4 for black); b) The advance c4-c5 (c5-c4) with following pressure on the pawn b7(b2); c) advance a2-a4-a5 (a7-a5-a4) with the opponent's pawn on b6(b3). Let's consider a

breakthrough d4-d5 (d5-d4). This is one of the most aggressive plans. Sometimes it is even connected with a pawn sacrifice. Its aim are to activate the pieces hiding behind the hanging pawns. In this case the opponent's King often becomes the object of the attack.
[...]

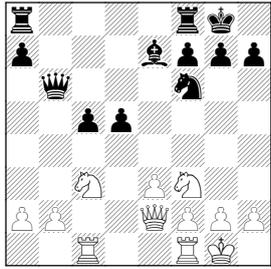
Kasparov - Portisch (Niksic, 1983)



Breakthrough d4-d5.

1. d5! ed
[1... Nxc4 2. Qe4 g6 3. Bxc4 Qxc4 4. Qe5 f6 5. Qxe6+ Rf7 6. Rc1 Qa6 7. d6±]
2. cd Bxd5 3. Bxh7+! Kxh7 4. Rxd5 Kg8
5. Bxg7! Kxc7 6. Ne5 Rfd8 7. Qg4+ Kf8
8. Qf5 f6 9. Nd7+ Rxd7 10. Rxd7 Qc5 11. Qh7 Rc7 12. Qh8+ Kf7 13. Rd3 Nc4 14. Rfd1 Ne5?
[14... Bd6 15. Rd5 Qxa3? 16. Rxd6□]
15. Qh7+ Ke6 16. Qg8+ Kf5 17. g4+ Kf4
18. Rd4+ Kf3 19. Qb3+□ Kasparov - Portisch (Niksic, 1983)

Bernstein - Capablanca (Moscow, 1914)



The advance of c4-c5 (c5-c4) with the following pressure on the pawn b7(b2).

1... c4! Black creates a backward pawn on d5 and gives the square d4 to the white pieces. These disadvantages are compensated by the following factors: 1) the pawn b2 is fixed and will be attacked by heavy pieces, 2) the Bishop on e7 gets more freedom for action. 2. Rfd1

[2. e4!?=]

2... Rfd8 3. Nd4 Bb4 4. b3?

[4. Qc2! [... ♠d4-e2-f4]]

4... Rac8 5. bc dc 6. Rc2 Bxc3 7. Rxc3 Nd5! 8. Rc2

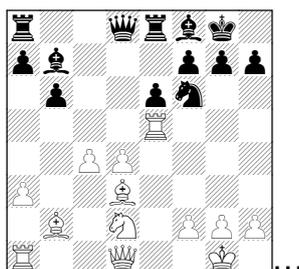
[8. Rxc4? Nc3°]

8... c3 9. Rdc1 Rc5 10. Nb3 Rc6 11. Nd4 Rc7 12. Nb5 Rc5 13. Nxc3?

[13. Nd4μ]

13... Nxc3 14. Rxc3 Rxc3 15. Rxc3 Qb2!° Bernstein - Capablanca (Moscow, 1914)

Ivkov - Korchnoi (Sousse, 1967)



Advance a2-a4-a5

(a7-a5-a4) with the opponent's pawn at b6(b3).

1. a4! g6 2. a5! Bg7 3. Re1 Nh5?!

[3... Rc8²]

4. Be4! Bxe4 5. Nxe4 Rc8 6. Qb3! f5?!

[6... Bxd4? 7. Bxd4 Qxd4 8. Rad1 Qxc4 9. Qxc4 Rxc4 10. Nd6 Rcc8 11. a6□;

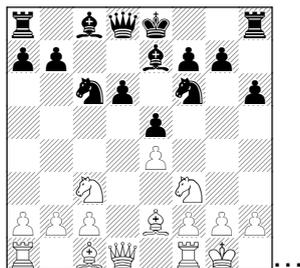
6... Nf6²]

7. Ng3 Nxg3 8. hg ba?! 9. Red1 Qc7 10. c5! Rb8 11. Qa2 Qc6 12. Bc3 Re7 13. Qxa5 Rd7 14. Qa6 Rc8 15. Qc4 Qd5 16. Qxd5 Rxd5 17. f4! Rd7

[17... Rcd8 18. Rxa7 Bxd4+ 19. Bxd4 Rxd4 20. Rxd4 Rxd4 21. c6□]

18. Kf1 Rc6 19. Ke2 Bf6 20. Ra4 g5 21. Rda1 gf 22. gf Rcc7 23. Rb1 Rc8 24. g3 h5 25. Rab4 Kf7 26. Rb7 Ke8 27. Kd3 Bd8 28. Kc4 a5 29. Rb8 Rxb8 30. Rxb8 Ke7 31. Ra8 Rb7 32. c6 Rb1 33. Ra7+ Kd6 34. Rd7+ Kxc6 35. Rxd8□ Ivkov - Korchnoi (Sousse, 1967)

PREVENTION



PREVENTION

Nimzowitsch was the first who described the idea of prophylaxis. He gave it the following definition: taking measures intended to prevent some events, undesirable from positional viewpoint. Nimzowitsch emphasized such prophylactic actions as prevention of opponent's liberating moves and "over-protection" of strategically important points.

1. Re1! In the Boleslavsky system of the Sicilian the struggle evolves for and against the liberating advance d6-d5. With his last move, introduced by Geller, White begins regrouping of his forces intended to hamper d6-d5. 1... O-O 2. h3!

[2. Bf1 Bg4!,,]

2... Be6(... d5) 3. Bf1!(õå5) Nb8!?

[3... a6 4. Nd5! Bxd5 5. ed Nb8 6. c42-f «]

4. b3! a6 5. a4! Nbd7 6. Bb2!(õå5) Rc8 7. a5 Qc7 8. Nd2!(... ãñ4-å3õd5) Rfe8 9. Nc4 Qc6 10. Qf3! d5 11. ed Nxd5 12. Nxd5 Bxd5 13. Qg3!(õå5) Bxc4 14. Bxc4±-f» Bb4 15. Re3 Re7 16. Qg4 Nf6 17. Qf5 Rce8 18. Rd1 Bxa5 19. Rg3 Bb6

[19... Kh8 20. Ba3 Rd7 21. Rxd7 Qxd7 22. Qxd7 Nxd7 23. Bxf7±]

20. Ba3 Ne4

[20... Rc7 21. Rd6□]

21. Rf3

[21. Rg6! Bxf2+ 22. Kh2 Bg3+ 23. Rxg3 Nxd3 24. Kxg3 g6 25. Qg4 h5 26. Qg5□]

21... Ng5 22. Rd6 Nxf3+ 23. gf Qc8

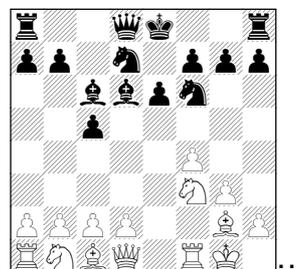
[1 23... Qc7... 24. Rxh6 gh 25. Qg6+ Kh8 (25... Kf8? 26. Qxf7#) 26. Qxh6+ Kg8=]

24. Qxc8 Rxc8 25. Rxb6 Rd7 26. Bb2□-Re8 27. f4! ef 28. Rg6 b5 29. Rxg7+ Kf8 30. Rh7 Re1+ 31. Kg2 Rdd1

[31... bc 32. Bf6□]

32. Bxf7 Rg1+ 33. Kf3 a5 34. Be6 Rd6 35. Bf5 Rd5 36. Kxf4 1:0, Apicella - Lutz, (Cap de Agde, 1994)

Steinitz - Weiss (Vienna,1882)

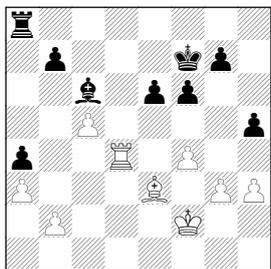


The e5-square is of great importance here. With his following moves White concentrates his pieces around this key point, protecting it with the bishop, both knights, queen and rook!

1. d3 O-O 2. Nbd2! Nb6 3. Qe2! Qc7 4. b3! Be7 5. Bb2! a5 6. a4 Nbd5 7. Nc4! Nb4 8. Rae1! Nfd5 9. Nfe5! Bf6 10. Qf2 Be8 11. g4! Rd8 12. g5 Be7 13. Ng4! Nc6 14. Qh4! The pieces, which protected the

e5-square, smoothly join the attack. 14... Nd4 15. Be4 f5 16. gf Nxf6 17. Nxf6+ Bxf6 18. Qxh7+ Kf7 19. Bg2 Rg8 20. Ne5+ Kf8 21. Rf2 b5 22. ab Bxb5 23. Bh3 Re8 24. Re4 Bc6 25. Rxd4 cd 26. Ba3+ Be7 27. Bxe6 Bxa3 28. Ng6# 1:0, Steinitz - Weiss, (Vienna, 1882)

Gottshal - Nimzowitsch (Gannover,1826)



A "mysterious" rook's move is another term introduced by Nimzowitsch. The rook moves to a closed file, but prevents some liberating pawn move.

White is going to gain space on the kingside with g3-g4, and Black prevents this with a "mysterious" rook's move. 1... Rh8!! (... c6-f5)

[1... Kg6 2. g4! hg 3. hg Rh8 4. Kg3=]

2. Rd1?!

[2. Rd2 Kg6 3. g4 hg 4. hg Rh3μ;

2. Rd6! ãâ6]

2... Kg6! 3. Rd4

[3. g4 hg 4. hg Rh2+°]

3... Kf5 4. Bd2 Rf8!!

[4... e5 5. fe fe 6. g4+! hg 7. hg+ Kf6 8. Rd6+=]

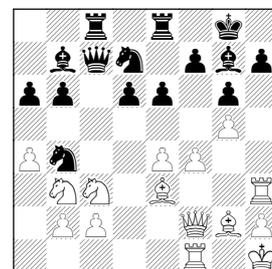
5. Be1 e5! 6. fe fe 7. Rh4 g5! 8. Rb4

[8. Rxh5? Kg6+°]

8... Ke6+ 9. Ke2 e4 10. Bf2 Rf3μ(žâ4) 11.

Rb6 Ke5 12. Rb4 Kd5 13. h4 gh 14. gh Rh3 15. Rd4+ Ke5 16. Rd8 Bd5 17. Re8+ Be6 18. Rd8 Kf4 19. Rf8+ Bf5 20. Rf7 Rh2 21. Re7 Bg4+ 22. Ke1 Kf3 23. Rf7+ Kg2 24. Kd2 Kf1 25. Ke3 Bf3 26. Bg3 Rxb2 27. Bd6 Rb3+ 28. Kd4 Kf2 29. Rg7 e3 30. Bg3+ Kf1 31. Rf7 e2 32. Re7 Bc6 0:1, Gottshal - Nimzowitsch, (Gannover, 1826)

Karpov - Kasparov (Moscow,1985)



Take a look at the fascinating "mysterious" rook's moves from the decisive game of the 1985 World championship match.

1... Re7!! (xf7) 2. Kg1

[2. Bd4 e5! 3. fe de,,;

2. f5 ef 3. ef Bxg2+ 4. Qxg2 gf,,;

2. Nd4 e5 3. Nde2 ef 4. Nxf4 Rce8']

2... Rce8!! White's main attacking intention is f4-f5, and the black rooks doubled on the closed e-file nip it in the bud. 3. Rd1!(xd6) f5! 4. gf Nxf6!

[4... Bxf6 5. Qd2f]

5. Rg3

[5. Bxb6 Qb8 6. a5 e5 7. f5 gf 8. ef Kh8,,]

5... Rf7 6. Bxb6 Qb8 7. Be3 Nh5© 8. Rg4 Nf6 9. Rh4?!

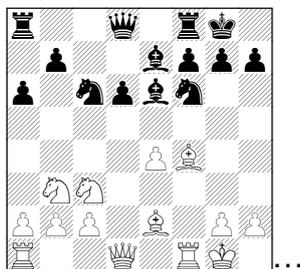
[9. Rg3=]

9... g5! 10. fg Ng4 11. Qd2 Nxe3 12. Qxe3 Nxc2 13. Qb6 Ba8! 14. Rxd6??

[14. Qxb8 Rxb8 15. Bh3! Re7>!]

14... Rb7! 15. Qxa6 Rxb3 16. Rxe6 Rxb2 17. Qc4 Kh8 18. e5 Qa7+ 19. Kh1 Bxg2+ 20. Kxg2 Nd4+ 0:1, Karpov - Kasparov, (Moscow, 1985)

Smyslov - Shweber (Leipzig,1960)



There is no need to mechanically prevent all opponent's liberating moves. A more subtle strategy is to assess consequences of these moves. Sometimes it makes sense to allow your opponent's liberating move in order to exploit weaknesses resulting from this move.

1. Kh1! White allows the standard b7-b5 advance intending to exploit its drawbacks. 1... b5?!

[1 1... Rc8]

2. Nd4 Nxd4

[2... Rc8 3. Nxe6 fe 4. Bg4 Nxg4 5. Qxg4 Qd7 6. Nd5 Bd8 7. Bg3^{2f}]

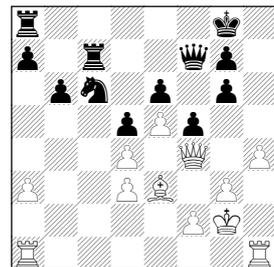
3. Qxd4 Rc8 4. a4!(ōà6,b5) Bc4 5. ab Bxe2 6. Nxe2 ab 7. Nc3 Rc4 8. Qd3 Qd7 9. b3 Rc5 10. Be3 Rh5 11. Ra7! Qe8 12. Bf4 b4 13. Rxe7! Qxe7 14. Bxd6 Qe8 15.

Bxb4 Ng4

[15... Qe5 16. Bd6 Rxh2+ 17. Kg1 □]

16. h3 Qb8 17. Bd6 Qb6 18. Bxf8 Kxf8 19. Qd7 Nf6 20. Qc8+ Ne8 21. Nd5 Qd6 22. c4 h6 23. c5 Qe5 24. Nf4 1:0, Smyslov - Shweber, (Leipzig, 1960)

Diez d. - Petrosian T. (Palma de Mallorca,1969)



White threatens with £g5 followed by opening up of the h-file with h4- h5. March of the black king across the board parries this threat. Nimzowitch gave this method a picturesque name "ruining away from the burning house".

1... Kf8! 2. Qg5 Ke8! 3. Rac1 Kd7! 4. h5 gh 5. Rxh5 Rg8 6. Rh7 Kc8! 7. Qh4 Qg6 8. Rh8 Rxh8 9. Qxh8+ Kb7! It turns out that White does not have a target for his attack on the kingside. 10. Qf8 Rc8 11. Qd6 Qe8^{3(ō¥å3)} 12. a4 Rd8 13. Qa3 Qe7 14. Qc3

[14. Qxe7+ Nxe7-µ]

14... Rc8 15. Bd2 g5!», 16. Qc2 f4! 17. gf gf 18. Bxf4 Rg8+ 19. Bg3 Nxd4 20. Qc3 Ne2 21. Qc6+ Kb8 22. Re1 Nf4+ 23. Kf1 Nxd3 24. Rb1 Qf7 25. Qd6+ Kb7 26. Ke2 Rc8! 27. a5

[27. Kxd3 Qf5+ 28. Ke2 Qxb1°]

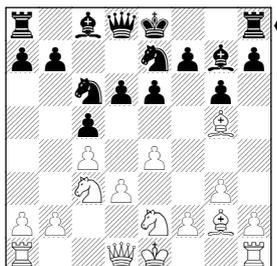
27... Rc2+ 28. Kf1

[28. Kxd3 Qf5+ 29. Ke3 Rc3+°]

28... Nxf2 29. Rxb6+ ab 30. Qxb6+ Kc8
31. Qa6+ Kb8 32. Qb6+ Qb7 33. Qd6+
Qc7 0:1, Diez del Corral - Petrosian T.,
(Palma de Mallorca, 1969)



Sliwa - Botvinnik (Budapest,1952)



White plans typical exchange of the black fianchettoed bishop after £d2 followed by ¥h6.

1... h6! Botvinnik begins a subtle preventive maneuver. Not an easy decision because he voluntary detains his king in the center. 2. Be3 Nd4!

[2... O-O?! 3. d4!²]

3. Qd2 Bd7!

[3... O-O?! 4. Bxh6! Bxh6 5. Qxh6 Nc2+ 6. Kd2 Nxa1 7. h4!©,]

4. Rb1(... b4) a5 5. O-O Bc6 6. Rbe1

[6. f4 O-O!]

6... Qd7 7. b3 b6 8. Rb1 Rd8 9. Rbe1 Kf8! This is the point! Black "castles" his king without rook's participation. 10. Nf4 Kg8 11. Nce2 Kh7 12. Bxd4 cdµ-† Sliwa - Botvinnik, (Budapest,1952)

Sokolov A. - Karpov (Linares,1987)

The most effective are preventive moves which hamper opponent's intentions and at the same time promote implementation of your own plans.

1... Ne4!! Karpov transfers his knight to f5 intending to attack the d4-pawn. At the same time, he hinders White's plan involving the b7-pawn attack with £b3 followed by centralizing ¡ad1.

[1... Nd7 2. Nf3!²†;

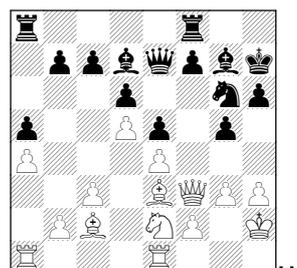
1... Ne8!?... ¢d6-f5,, 2. Qb3! Nd6 3. Rad1 Qc8 4. Qc3 Rd8 5. h3²† Y. Gruenfeld - Lein, New York 1985]

2. Qc2

[2. Qb3 Bxe5! 3. de Nd2! 4. Bxd2 Qxd2=]

2... Nd6! 3. b3 c5! 4. Rad1 Nf5 5. d5 Bxe5 6. de Qc7 7. ef+ Rxf7 8. g3 Raf8 9. Bg4 Nxe3 10. fe Rxf1+ ½:½, Sokolov A. - Karpov, (Linares, 1987)

Schlechter - Nimzowitsch (Karlsbad,1907)



Sometimes preventive moves are fraught with threats.

1. Rh1! (... h3-h4,») Qe8!! An unusual preventive move. Black threatens with 2. . £ñ8 with the idea to trap the white queen after 3. h4? ¥g4°. White does not have time for preparations and is forced to break through under unfavorable for him circumstances.

[1... b6?! 2. h4 gh 3. gh Nxh4 4. Qh5 f5 5. Kg1,»]

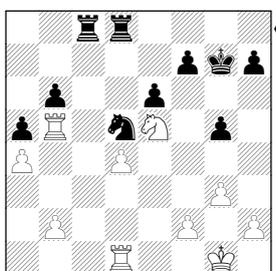
2. h4 Qc8!(... ¥g4°) 3. Bd3 Bg4 4. Qg2 gh 5. f3 h3 6. Qf1 f5!!

[6... Bd7? 7. g4!... £h3±,»]

7. fg fe 8. Qxh3 ed 9. Bxh6 Rh8!! [...] 0:1, Schlechter - Nimzowitsch, (Karlsbad, 1907)

[10. Bxg7+ Kxg7°]

Zakharov - Dvoretzky M. (USSR,1978)



Prevention plays an important role while utilizing an advantage. The main purpose is maximal limitation of opponent's counter-chances.

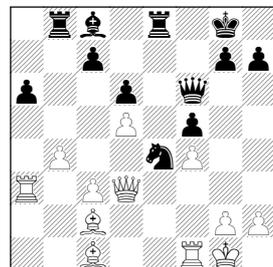
1... h5!

[1... Rc2 2. Ng4!... ¢ã3,, õb6,g5]

2. Rd2 f6 3. Nf3 Rc4! 4. b3 Rc6(õ!b5) 5. h4 g4 6. Ne1 Nc7! 7. Rxh5 Kg6 0:1,

Zakharov - Dvoretzky M., (USSR, 1978)

Beting K. - Nimzowitsch (Riga,1910)



In conclusion of this chapter have a look at the elegant preventive combination by Nimzowitsch. White threatens to bring his dark-squared bishop to the long diagonal after ¥ñ1-ã3-d4.

1... Qf7!! (õd5) 2. Be3 Nf6!! 3. Bb3 Bb7! 4. Rd1

[4. c4 Bc8! 5. Bd2 Ne4! 6. Be1 Qf6!³xe4 All of Black's pieces returned to their starting positions, but the situation has changed - the long diagonal is inaccessible for the white bishop.]

4... Bxd5! 5. Bxd5 Qxd5 6. Qxd5+ Nxd5 7. Ba7

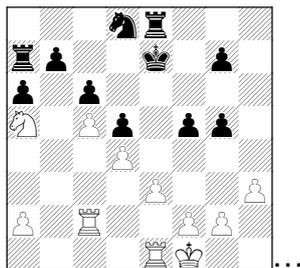
[7. Rxd5 Rxe3 8. Rxf5 Rbe8!µ]

7... Ne3! 8. Rd3 Ng4 9. Rd1 Ra8 10. Bd4

[10. Rxa6 Re4 11. g3 Re2µ]

10... Re4µ Beting K. - Nimzowitsch, (Riga,1910)

THE RULE OF TWO WEAKNESSES



THE RULE OF TWO WEAKNESSES

This rule was formulated by Nimzowitch. Two weaknesses, each of those seems to be defensible, are attacked alternately. The attacking player utilizes his space advantage and better communications. At some moment the defending player cannot follow opponent's quick regrouping and loses the game.

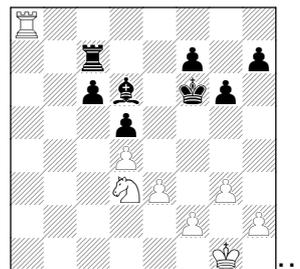
1. Rb2!(õb7) Kd7 2. Reb1 Kc8 3. Ke2 Re7 4. Kf3 Re4 5. g4! Having fettered the black pieces with the b7-pawn defense, White creates the second weakness on the kingside. 5... g6 6. Rg1! Nf7 7. h4! gh 8. gf gf

[8... g5 9. Nc4!±]

9. Rg7 Nd8 10. Rg8 f4 11. Rh8 fe 12. fe Kd7 13. Rg2 Re8 14. Rxh4 Re7 15. Rh8 Kc7 16. Rgg8 Rd7 17. Nb3!(... ãñ1-d3õå5) a5 18. Nc1 Ra8 19. Nd3 b5 20. cb+ Kxb6 21. Nc5 Rd6 22. a4 Rc8 23. Kg4!(... øf5-e5) [...] 1:0, Rubinstein - Takach, (Budapest, 1926)

[23... Kc7 24. Rg7+ Kb6 (24... Kb8 25. Rhh7□) 25. Rxd8 Rcx8 26. Rb7#]

Kotov - Pahmann (Venice,1950)



The c6-pawn is the only weakness in Black's camp. It is easily defensible so a direct attack of this pawn can hardly promise White anything real. To get winning chances, White needs to create another target for an attack.

1. g4! Fixing the second weakness, the h7-pawn.

[1. Kg2?! h5!]=

1... Ke6

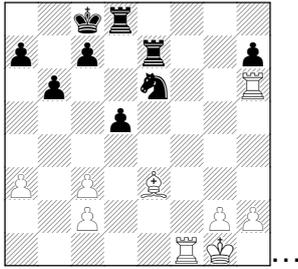
[1... Kg5 2. h3 h5 3. f4+ Kh4 4. Kg2... ãå1-f3□]

2. Kg2 Rb7 3. Re8+ Re7 4. Rh8 f6 5. h4 Rb7 6. Kf3 Rf7 7. Re8+ Re7 8. Rd8 Ra7 9. Nc5+! Ke7 10. Rc8 Bxc5 11. dc(xd6) Kd7 12. Rh8! Ke6 13. Rd8! Ke7 14. Rd6 Ra6 15. g5!(xe5) fg 16. hg Kf7 17. Kg3

[17. Kf4 Ra4+ 18. Ke5?? Re4#]

17... Ke7 18. f3 Ra3 19. Kf4! Ra4+ 20. Ke5! Ra3 21. Rxc6 Rxe3+ 22. Kxd5 Rd3+ 23. Ke4 Rc3 24. f4 Rc1 25. Rc7+ Kd8 26. Rxh7 Rxc5 27. Rf7 1:0, Kotov - Pahmann, (Venice, 1950)

Rubinstein - Seleznev (Budapest,1922)



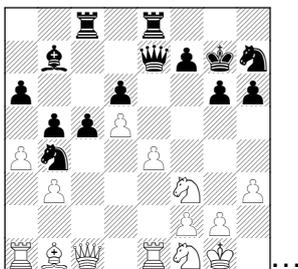
Nimzowitch wrote that the rule of two weaknesses works even when the weakness is single! In this case it is necessary to alternate different ways of attack, that is frontal, lateral, and from the rear. This compensates absence of the second weakness.

1. Bf2 Rf8 2. Re1 Ref7 3. Rhxe6 Rxf2 4. Re8+ Kb7

[4... Kd7 5. R1e7+ Kd6 6. Rxf8 Rxf8 7. Rxh7□]

5. Rxf8 Rxf8 6. Re7!(ōh7)'e7-h7 Rh8 7. Kf2 Kc6 8. g4 Kd6 9. Rf7 a5 10. g5 a4 11. h4 b5 12. Kg3 c5(... b4) 13. Rf6+! Kc7 14. Rh6!(xh7)'h6-h8 b4 15. cb cb 16. ab Ra8 17. Rxh7+ Kb6 18. Rf7 a3 19. Rf1 a2 20. Ra1 Kb5 21. g6 Kxb4 22. h5 1:0, Rubinstein - Seleznev, (Budapest, 1922)

Anand - Kamsky (Linares,1995)



The rule of two weaknesses is often

associated with play on both flanks. Opponent's king may be one of these weaknesses.

1. Ne3(... ♝g4f») h5

[1... Qf6 2. Ng4! Qxa1 3. Qxh6+ Kg8 4. e5! Rxe5 (4... Qc3 5. Bxg6 fg 6. Nf6+ Nxf6 7. Qxg6+ Kf8 8. Qxf6+ Kg8 9. Re4□) 5. Ngxe5 de 6. Bxg6 Qxe1+ 7. Nxe1 fg 8. Qxg6+±]

2. Qd2 Kg8 3. ab!(‘a1-a8) ab 4. Nd1!(xb5) Na6

[4... Ra8 5. Rxa8 Rxa8 6. Nc3 Qd7 7. e5!±]

5. Nc3 b4 6. Nb5 Nc7 7. Bd3 Nxb5 8. Bxb5 Red8 9. Bc4 Nf6 10. Qh6! Qf8

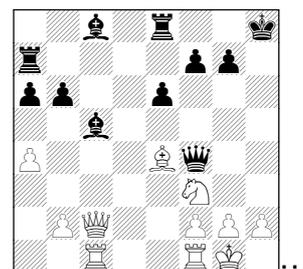
[10... Ra8 11. Rxa8 Bxa8 (11... Rxa8 12. e5 de (12... Nxd5 13. Ng5□) 13. d6□) 12. e5 de 13. d6 Rxd6 14. Rxe5 Rd1+ 15. Kh2 Qf8 16. Qxg6+□; 10... Nxe4 11. Ra2... !ae2□]

11. Qg5 Qg7 12. Ra7! Rc7 13. Ba6! Rb8 14. e5! Ne8

[14... de 15. d6 Rd7 16. Nxe5]

15. Rxb7 Rxb7 16. Bxb7 Rxb7 17. Qd8□ Qf8 18. Ra1! Nc7 19. Qd7 Qb8 20. Qxd6 c4 21. bc b3 22. Rb1 b2 23. Qc5 Rb3 24. Qd4 Qb4 25. Ng5 Rc3 26. Qf4 f5 27. ef Nxd5 28. f7+ 1:0, Anand - Kamsky, (Linares, 1995)

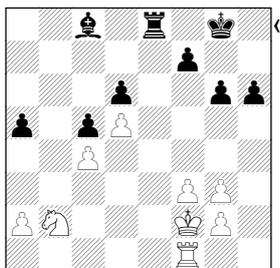
Alekhin - Rubinstein (Karlsbad,1923)



Attack on both flanks may develop slowly, but sometimes a combinational burst follows.

1. b4!(xc8) Bf8
[1... Bxb4? 2. Qxc8 Rxc8 3. Rxc8+ Bf8 4. Rxf8#]
2. Qc6 Rd7 3. g3! Qb8(öb6)
[3... Qd6 4. Qc4! Qe7 5. Ne5 Rd6 6. Bg6□]
4. Ng5!(... ¢f7) Red8 5. Bg6! Qe5
[5... Bb7 6. Qc4;
5... fg 6. Qe4 Bxb4 7. Qh4+ Kg8 8. Qh7+ Kf8 9. Qh8+ Ke7 10. Qxg7+ Ke8 11. Qg8+ Bf8 12. Qxg6+ Ke7 13. Qxe6#]
6. Nxf7+□ Rxf7 7. Bxf7 Qf5 8. Rfd1 Rxd1+ 9. Rxd1 Qxf7 10. Qxc8 Kh7 11. Qxa6 Qf3 12. Qd3+ 1:0, Alekhin - Rubinstein, (Karlsbad, 1923)

Jacobsen - Nimzowitsch (Copenhagen,1923)

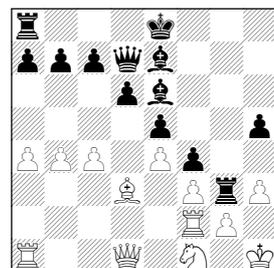


White's queenside is weak. To create another weakness in the white camp, Black advances his kingside pawns.

- 1... Bf5(öñ4, 'b1-b8) 2. Rc1 h5!
[2... Rb8?! 3. Nd1]
3. Rc3 a4! 4. Nd1
[4. Nxa4 Ra8 5. Nb2 Rxa2 6. Rb3 g5µ;
4. Ra3 Rb8 5. Nxa4? Ra8°]

- 4... g5! 5. Ne3 Bd7 6. Ke2 f5! 7. Kd2
[7. f4 Kf7 8. fg Kg6µ]
- 7... f4! 8. gf gf 9. Nd1?
[1 9. Nc2 Kf7 10. Ne1 Kf6 11. Rc2 Rb8!
12. Kc3 Rb1 13. Re2 Rc1+ 14. Nc2 Bf5°]
- 9... Kf7 10. Nf2 Rg8 11. Ke2 Rxc2° 12. Rc1 Bf5 13. a3 h4 14. Rf1 Kf6 15. Kd1 h3 16. Ke2 h2 17. Ra1 Bd3+ 18. Kxd3 Rxf2 19. Ke4 Kg5 20. Rb1 Re2+ 21. Kd3 Re3+ 0:1, Jacobsen - Nimzowitsch, (Copenhagen, 1923)

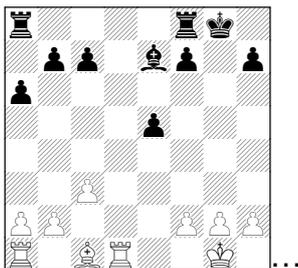
Zeifert - Nimzowitsch (Leipzig,1926)



It happens sometimes that objective of actions on side of the board is creating favorable conditions for an attack on another flank.

- 1... h4! 2. Nxc3 hg 3. Rd2 a5!(xc5) 4. b5?
[4. Bf1 ab 5. Rb2 c5³]
- 4... Bxh3! 5. gh Qxh3+ 6. Kg1 d5!! [...] 0:1, Zeifert - Nimzowitsch, (Leipzig, 1926)
[7. ed Bc5+°]

PLAN



PLAN

In every position you must be guided by some plan. This makes your play logical, purposeful and grants good practical results. Lasker wrote: "Reasonable plan makes us heroes, absence of plan makes us faint-hearted fools." He even said, "a bad plan is better than no plan at all".

In the following example White lost a completely equal ending because he played without any plan. At the same time, Black's play is a good illustration to Kotov's statement: "Plan in a chess game is sequence of strategic operations, each of them having its own design and following from position's demands".

1. Bh6

[1. f4!? Bc5+ 2. Kf1 Rad8 3. Rxd8 Rxd8 4. Ke2=]

1... Rfd8 2. Kf1?!

[2. f4! Rd6! (2... e4 3. f5!; 2... Bc5+ 3. Kf1 Be3 4. g3²) 3. Rxd6 cd=]

2... f5!(... ϕ f7-e6) 3. Rxd8+ Rxd8 4. g3 Kf7 5. Be3 h5 6. Ke2 Ke6 7. Rd1 Rg8! 8. f3

[8. h4 Rg4... f4f »]

8... h4 9. Bf2 hg 10. hg Rh8 11. Bg1 Bd6 12. Kf1 Rg8 13. Bf2 b5! 14. b3?! a5! The rule of two weaknesses! 15. Kg2 a4 16.

Rd2

[16. b4 Rc8 17. Bc5 Ra8 ... !a8-a6-c6]

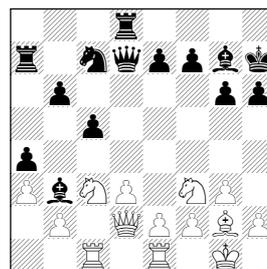
16... ab 17. ab Ra8 18. c4 Ra3! 19. c5 Be7 20. Rb2 b4 21. g4 f4 22. Kf1 Ra1+ 23. Ke2 Rc1 24. Ra2 Rc3 25. Ra7 Kd7 26. Rb7 Rxb3 27. Rb8 Rb2+ 28. Kf1 b3 29. Kg1 Kc6 30. Kf1 Kd5! 31. Rb7 e4! 32. fe+ Kxe4 33. Rxc7 Kf3 34. Rxe7 Rxf2+ 35. Ke1 b2 36. Rb7 Rc2 37. c6! Kg3!

[37... Rc1+? 38. Kd2 b1Q 39. Rxb1 Rxb1 40. c7!]

38. c7 f3 39. Kd1 Rxc7 40. Rxb2 f2 0:1, Znosko-Borovsky - Alekhin, (Paris, 1933).

According to Alekhine, he implemented the plan consisting of the following stages: 1) exchange of one rook; 2) king's transferring to e6; 3) rook's activity along the g-file and the h-pawn advance result in opening up of the g-file; 4) the white king and bishop are forced to cover the h1- and h2-squares from the black rook invasion; 5) advance of the a- and b-pawns results in opening up of files on the queenside; 6) inasmuch as the white king is still on the kingside, White cannot prevent the black rook invasion of the 1st or 2nd rank.

Zubarev N. - Rubinstein (Moscow,1925)



Not always a player has to think out a plan on his own. For many middlegame positions typical plans have been elaborated.

1... Nb5! This game was one of the first examples that have shown the power of the knight outpost on d4. Black's plan includes the following steps: 1) The black knight is transferred to d4 and supported by e7-e5. 2) As White cannot bear this knight, he captures it and Black recaptures with the e-pawn. 3) Black exerts pressure on the backward e2-pawn. 4) This forces White to advance his e-pawn. 5) Black captures this pawn. After d4xe3 and f2xe3 the white pawns on d3 and e3 become targets for an attack. 2. Ra1 Nd4! 3. Rec1 e5! 4. Nxd4 ed! 5. Nd1 Re8! 6. f4?!

[6. e4 de 7. feµ õd3,e3]

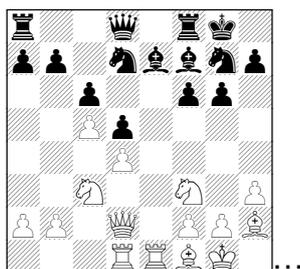
6... Qe6 7. Bf3 Rae7 8. Nf2 Bd5! 9. Bxd5 Qxd5 10. Re1 Qh5 11. Qd1 Rxe2 12. Rxe2 Qxe2 13. Qxa4 Re6 14. Rb1 Qf3 15. Qd1 Re2 16. Qf1 c4! 17. b4

[17. dc d3... ♣d4°]

17... cd 18. Rb3 Rxf2! 0:1,Zubarev - Rubinstein, (Moscow,1925) [...]

[19. Qxf2 Qd1+ 20. Kg2 Qxb3°]

Yudovich - Klaman (Leningrad,1947)



A plan should be based on specific features of position, such as king's positioning, open files and diagonals, pawn structure, weak squares etc.

1. b4!(... b5f«) The peculiarities of the pawn structure as well as pressure along the h2-b8 diagonal prompt White to attack on the queenside. 1... b5 2. a4! a6 3. Ra1 Re8 4. ab ab 5. Ra2!(à1-à8) Qc8 6. Rea1 Qb7 7. Qb2 Ne6 8. Ra3 Nc7 9. Ra5 Rxa5 10. Rxa5 Na6

[10... Ra8? 11. Bxc7□]

11. Qa3 Nab8

[11... Ra8 12. Nxb5! cb 13. Bxb5□]

12. Ra7 Qc8 13. Nxb5! cb 14. Bxb5 Kg7

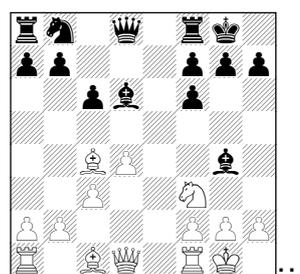
[14... Rd8 15. Rc7□]

15. Bxb8 Nxb8 16. Bxe8 Qxe8 17. b5 Bf8 18. Qe3 Qc8

[18... Qxb5 19. Qe6□]

19. Qf4(... ♠à5□;... ♠à8□) 1:0, Yudovich - Klaman, (Leningrad, 1947)

Boleslavsky - Batuev (USSR,1939)



Making his plan, one should consider not only pawn structure, but deployment of pieces as well.

1. h3 Bh5 2. g4!! The pawn structure hints White to attack on the queenside where he is a pawn up. However,

Boleslavsky implements a non-typical plan of the kingside pawn assault supported by the b3-bishop firing along the a2-g8 diagonal. 2... Bg6 3. Nh4 Nd7 4. Qf3 Re8?!

[4... Nb6!? 5. Bb3 Nd5]

5. Nxc6 hg 6. h4! Nf8 7. Bd2 Qc7 8. Kg2 Ne6 9. Rh1 Bf4

[9... Nf4+ 10. Bxf4 Bxf4 11. g5 fg 12. hg Bxc6 13. Bxf7+ Qxf7 14. Rh8+]

10. Bxe6! Bxd2 11. Bb3 Qf4 12. Rad1 Re7

[12... Qxf3+ 13. Kxf3 Bh6 14. Rhg1 g5 15. h5!]

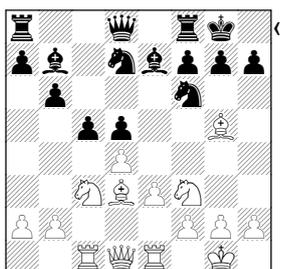
13. g5! fg

[13... Kh7 14. gf gf 15. Rxd2! Qxd2 16. Qxf6]

13... f5 14. Rh3 Rae8 15. Qxf4 Bxf4 16. Kf3 Bc7 17. h5!

14. h5! Qxf3+ 15. Kxf3 g4+ 16. Kg3 Bh6 17. hg a5 18. a4 Kf8 19. gf Boleslavsky - Batuev, (USSR,1939)

Phillsbury - Tarrasch (Hastings,1895)



A chess game between strong players involves a struggle of plans. In the following game both sides implemented their plans purposefully and vigorously. Fate of the battle was decided by an unexpected combination, one of the

pearls in chess classic collection.

1... c4!?(... a6,b5-b4f«)

[1... Ne4!?

2. Bb1 a6 3. Ne5!(... f4,£f3-h3f»”) b5 4. f4 Re8 5. Qf3 Nf8 6. Ne2 Ne4! 7. Bxe7 Rxe7 8. Bxe4 de 9. Qg3 f6 10. Ng4 Kh8 11. f5! Qd7 12. Rf1 Rd8

[12... Rae8!?

13. Rf4 Qd6 14. Qh4 Rde8 15. Nc3 Bd5

[15... b4!?

16. Nf2 Qc6 17. Rf1 b4 18. Ne2 Qa4 19. Ng4 Nd7 20. R4f2! Kg8

[20... Qxa2 21. Nf4 Bf7 22. Ng6+ Kg8

(22... Bxc6 23. fg h6 24. Nxc6 gh 25.

Qxc6+ Kg8 26. Rf4,□) 23. Nxe7+ Rxe7

24. Qg3! Kf8 25. Qc7! h5 26. Qd8+ Be8 27. Ne5!]

21. Nc1 c3 22. b3 Qc6 23. h3 a5 24. Nh2 a4 25. g4 ab 26. ab Ra8 27. g5 Ra3

[27... fg!? 28. Qxc5 Nf6]

28. Ng4 Bxb3 29. Rg2! Kh8 30. gf gf 31. Nxb3 Rxb3 32. Nh6 Rg7

[32... Re8 33. Qg4]

33. Rxc7 Kxc7 34. Qg3+!! Kxh6 35. Kh1!!

[35. Rf4 Rb1+=]

35... Qd5 36. Rg1 Qxf5 37. Qh4+ Qh5 38. Qf4+ Qg5 39. Rxc5 fg 40. Qd6+ Kh5 41. Qxd7 c2?

[41... Rb1+ 42. Kh2 Rb2+ 43. Kg3 Kg6]

42. Qxc7# 1:0, Phillsbury - Tarrasch, (Hastings, 1895)